S
435
M34
1668

ALBERT R. MANN
LIBRARY

NEW YORK STATE COLLEGES
OF
AGRICULTURE AND HOME ECONOMICS

AT

CORNELL UNIVERSITY

S
435
M34
m a
vault

Date Due

Library Bureau Cat. No. 1137

Cornell University Library
S 435.M34 1668
Cheap and good husbandry, for the well-o
3 1924 000 242 606 mann, vaul

Gervase Markham 1568?-1637

Cheap and *Good*

HUSBANDRY,

FOR

The *well-Ordering* of all Beasts and Fowls, and for the general Cure of their Diseases.

Containing the Natures, Breeding, Choice, Use, Feeding, and Curing of the Diseases of all manner of Cattel, as Horse, Ox, Cow, Sheep, Goats, Swine, and tame Conies.

Shewing further the whole Art of Riding Great Horses, with the breaking and ordering of them, and the Dyeting of the Running, Hunting, and Ambling Horse, and the manner how to use them in their Travel.

Also, approved Rules for the Cramming, and fatting all sorts of Poultry, and Fowls, both tame and wild, &c. And divers good and well approved Medicines, for the Cure of all the Diseases in Hawks, of what kind soever.

Together with the Use and Profit of Bees, the manner of Fish-Ponds, and the taking of all sorts of Fish.

Gathered together for the general Good and Profit of the Common-wealth, by exact and assured Experience from English practices, both certain, easie, and cheap; differing from all former and forrain experiments, which either agreed not with our Clime, or were too hard to come by, or over costly, and to little purpose; all which herein are avoided. Newly Corrected and Enlarged with many Excellent Additions.

The Twelfth Edition.

LONDON,
Printed by *John Streater*, for *George Sawbridge*, at his Hou[se]
Clarken-well-Green, 1668

1668

435
M34 Vault
1668

326965

TO THE

Right Honourable,

And moſt enobled with all inward, and outward Vertues,

RICHARD SACKVILE,

Baron of *Buckhurſt*, and Earl of *Dorſet*, &c.

ALthough the monſtrous ſhapes of Books (Right Honourable, and beſt enobled Lord) have, with their diſguiſed and unprofitable Vizard-like faces, half ſcar'd even Vertue her ſelf from that ancient Defence and Patronage, which in former Ages moſt Nobly ſhe employed, to preſerve them from Envy: Yet ſo much I know, the largeneſs of your Worthy Breſt is endued with Wiſdome, Courage, and Bounty, that notwithſtanding the vanities of our ignorant Writers, you will be pleaſed out of your Noble Spirit, favourably to behold whatſoever ſhall bring a publick good to our Countrey, at which end I have

have only aymed in this ſmall Book: in which, though I have run far from the way or tract of other Writers in this nature, yet I doubt not but your Honour ſhall find my path more eaſie, more certain, and more ſafe than any, nay by much leſs difficult or dangerous to walk in. I muſt confeſs, ſomething in this nature I have formerly publiſhed, as namely of the Horſe only, with whoſe Nature and Uſe I have been exerciſed and acquainted from my Childhood, and I hope, without boaſt, need not yield to any in this Kingdome: Yet in this Work, I hope your Lordſhip, and all other Princely maintainers of that worthy and ſerviceable Beaſt, ſhall find, I have found out, and herein explained, a nearer and more eaſie courſe for his preſervation and health, than hath hitherto been found or practiſed by any but my ſelf only: whatſoever it is, in all humbleneſs I offer it as a ſacrifice of my Love and Service to your Honour, and will ever whilſt I have breath to be

Your Honours

in all dutiful Service,

G. M.

TO THE Courteous READER.

THere is no Artiſt, or man of Induſtry (Courteous and Gentle Reader) which mixeth Judgment with his Experience, but findeth in the travel of his Labours better and nearer courſes to make perfect the beauty of his work, than were at firſt preſented to the eye of his knowledge: for the Minde being pre-occupied, and buſied with a vertuous ſearch, is ever ready to catch hold of whatſoever can adorn or illuſtrate the Excellency of the thing, in which it is imployed; and hence it hapneth, that my ſelf, having ſeriouſly beſtowed many years to finde out the truth of theſe knowledges, of which I have treated in this Book, have now found out the infallible way of curing all diſeaſes in Cattle; which is by many degrees more certain, more eaſie, leſs difficult, and without all manner of coſt and extraordinary charges, than ever hath been publiſhed by any home-born or forrain practicer. Wherein (friendly Reader) thou ſhalt find that my whole drift is to help the needful in his moſt want and extremity. For having many times in my journying, ſeen poor and Rich-mens Cattel fall ſuddenly ſick, ſome travelling by the way, ſome drawing in the Plough or Draught, and

and ſome upon other Imployments; I have alſo beheld thoſe Cattel or Horſes dye, ere they could be brought either to a Smith, or other places where they might receive Cure: Nay, if with much pains they have been brought to the place of Cure, yet have I ſeen Smiths ſo unprovided of Apothecaries Simples, that for want of a matter of ſix-pence, a Beaſt hath died worth many Angels. To prevent this, I have found out thoſe certain and approved Cures, wherein if every good Horſe-lover, or Huſbandman, will but acquaint his knowledge with a few herbs, or common-Weeds, he ſhall be ſure in every Field, Paſture, Meadow, or Land-furrows; nay, almoſt by every high-way-ſide, or blind Ditch, to find that which ſhall preſerve and keep his Horſe from all ſuddain extremities. If thou ſhalt find benefit, think mine hours not ill waſted; if thou ſhalt not have occaſion to approve them, yet give them thy gentle paſſage to others, and think me, as I am,

Thy Friend,

G. M.

A short Table expounding all the hard words in this Book.

A

Auri-pigmentum, or *Orpment*, is a yellow hard substance to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Aristolochia-longa, otherwise called red *Madder*, is an Herb growing almost in every field.

Aristolochia-rotunda, is the Herb called *Galingale*.

Agrimony, or *Egrimony*, is an usual and known Herb.

Ameos, *Comin royal*, is an Herb of some called *Bulwort*, *Bishops-weed*, or *Herb-william*.

Anise, is that Herb which bears *Anise-seeds*.

Aver, of some called *Dill*, is an Herb like *Fennel*, only the seeds are broad like *Oringe-seed*.

Agnus-Castus, of some called *Tulesain*, is an Herb with reddish leaves, and sinewy, like *Plantane*.

Egyptiacum, is a reddish *Unguent*, to be bought at the Apothecaries, and is soveraign for *Fistulaes*.

Assafœtida, a stinking strong Gum, to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Adraces, or *Adarces*, is that *Salt* which is ingendred on the Marshes, by the violence of the Suns heat after the tide is gone away.

Asterion, is an Herb growing amongst stones, as on walls, or such like; it appeareth by night, it hath yellow flowers like Foxgloves, and the leaves are round and blewish.

Aloes, is a bitter Gum, to be bought at the Apothecaries.

B

Beten, or *Beets*, is an Herb with long broad leaves indented, and grows in hedge-rows.

Bole-armenick, is a red hard earthly substance, to be bought at the Apothecaries, and is of a cold and binding nature.

Broomwort, is an Herb with brown coloured leaves, and beareth a blew flower, and most commonly grows in Woods.

C

Cresses, are of two kinds, *Water-Cresses*, and *Land-Cresses*: they have broad smooth leaves, and the first grows in moist places, the later in Gardens, or by high-waies.

Comin, see *Ameos*.

Carthamus, is an Herb in taste like *Saffron*, and is called *bastard-Saffron*, or *Mock-Saffron*.

Calamint, is an ordinary Herb, and groweth by Ditches sides, by high-waies, and sometimes in Gardens.

Coriander, is an Herb which beareth a round little seed.

Chives, are a small round Herb growing in Gardens, like little young *Onions*, or *Scallions*, not above a week old.

D

Diapente, a soveraign powder made of five equal simples, as *Bay-berries*, *Ivory*, *Aristolochia-rotunda*, *Myrrhe*, and *Gentiana*, may be bought of the Apothecary.

Betony, is an Herb called *Pepper-wort*, or *Horse-radish*, and grows in many open fields.

Dragon, is an Herb common in every Garden.

E

Elicampane, is an Herb of some called *Horse-helm*, and grows almost in every field, and every Garden.

Eye-bright, is an Herb common in every Meadow.

F

Fenugreek, is an Herb which hath a long slender trailing stalk, hollow within, and sown in Gardens, but easiest to be had at the Apothecaries.

Fernsmund, is an Herb of some called *Water-Fern*, hath a triangular stalk, and is like *Polypody*, and it grows in Bogs and hollow grounds.

G

Galingale, see *Aristolochia-rotunda*.

H

Horse-mint, is an Herb that grows by water sides, and is called *Water-mint*, or *Brook-mint*.

Horse-Helm, see *Elicampane*.

House-

House-leek, is a weed which grows upon the tops of houses that are thatcht, and are like unto a small *Hartichoke*.

Hearb Robert, hath leaves like *Hearb Bennet*, and small flowers of purple colour, and grows in most common fields and Gardens.

I

Ivory, is the shaving of the *Elephants* tooth, or the old *Harts* or *Stags* horn, being the smooth white thereof.

K

Knot-grass, is a long round weed, with little round smooth leaves, and the stalks very knotty and rough, winding and wreathing one seam into another very confusedly, and groweth for the most part in very moist places.

L

Lettuce, is a common sallet in every Garden.

Lollium, is that weed which we call *Cockel*, and groweth amongst the corn in every field.

Liverwort, is a common Herb in every garden.

M

Mayth, is a Weed that grows among corn, and is called of some *Hogs-fennel*.

Myrrhe, is a Gum to be bought at the Apothecarries.

Man-drake, is an Herb which grows in gardens, and beareth certain yellow Apples, from whence the Apothecaries draw a soveraign Oil for broken bones.

N

Nepe, see *Calamint*.

O

Riganum, is an Herb called *Wild-Marjerom*, and grows both in open fields, or in low Copses.

Orifice, is the mouth, hole, or open passage of any wound or ulcer.

Opoponax, a Drug usual to be bought at the Apothecaries.

P

[illegible] of *Burgundy*, is *Rosen*, and the blacker the better.

[illegible]*taus*, is a fat leaf and sinewy, growing close to the [illegible] it is called Whay-bred leaf.

[illegible], is an Herb that groweth both in fields and gardens, [illegible]hen it flowreth.

Patch-greaſe, it is that tallow which is gotten from the boyling of Shoo-makers ſhreads.

Q

Quinque-folio, of ſome called *Cinque-foile*, is that Herb which is called *Five-leaved Graſs*.

R

Red-Oker, is a hard red ſtone, which we cal *Raddle*, *Orell*, *Marking-ſtone*.

S

Selendine, or *Tetterwort*, is a Weed growing in the bottome of Hedges, which being broke, a yellow juice will drop and run out of it.

Sherwit, is an Herb with many ſmall leaves, and grows moſt in Gardens.

Stubwort, is an Herb which grows in woody places, and is called *Wood Sorrel*.

Sanguis Draconis, is a hard red Gum to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Sperma cæti, is the ſeed of the *Whale*, excellent for inward bruiſes, and to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Stonecrop, is a green Weed growing on the tops of walls.

Sal-armoniack, is a Drug to be bought at the Apothecaries.

T

Tuſſilaginis, is that Weed which we call *Colts-foot*.

Triapharmacon, a compoſition made of three ſimples, and to be bought at the Apothecaries.

Turn-merick, is a yellow Simple, of ſtrong ſavour, to be bought at the Apothecaries.

V

Verdigreaſe, is a green fatty Gum drawn from Copper, and is to be bought at the Apothecaries.

W

Wood-roſe, or *Wild Eglantine*, is that ſmall t[illegible] which grows upon Briars in Woods or Hed[illegible]

Y

Yarrow, is an Herb called the *Water Violet* Lakes or Mariſh grounds.

THE GENERALL CURE AND ORdering of all Horſes: As alſo the whole Art of Riding great Horſes; with the breeding, breaking, and ordering of them: Together with the manner how to uſe the running, hunting, and ambling Horſe, before, in, and after their Travel.

CHAP. I.

Of the Horſe in general, his choice for every ſeveral Uſe, his Ordering, Diet, and beſt preſervation for health, both in Travel, and in Reſt.

THE full ſcope and purpoſe of this work, is in few, plain, and moſt undoubted true words to ſhew the Cure of all manner of diſeaſes belonging to all manner of neceſſary Cattel, nouriſhed and preſerved for the uſe of man, making by way of demonſtration, ſo eaſie and plain a paſſage, to the underſtanding and accompliſhment of the ſame, that not the ſimpleſt which hath priviledge to be eſteemed no Idiot; nor the pooreſt, if he can make two ſhillings, but ſhall both underſtand how to profit himſelf by the Book, and at the cheapeſt rate purchaſe all the receipts and ſimples declared in the whole Volume. For in ſober truth this Book is fit for every Gentleman, Husbandman, and good mans pocket, being a memory which a man carrying about him will, when he is call'd to account, give a man full ſatisfaction whether it be in the Field, in the Town, or any other place where a man is moſt unprovided.

And now foraſmuch as the Horſe of all creatures is the nobleſt, ſtrongeſt, and apteſt to do a man the beſt and worthieſt ſervices both in Peace and Warre, I think it not amiſs firſt to Natur hor

begin with him. Therefore of his nature in general: he is v. liant, ſtrong, and nimble, and above all other beaſts moſt ap and able to indure the extreameſt labours, the moiſt quality his compoſition being ſuch, that neither extream heat doth dry up his ſtrength, nor the violence of cold, freeze the warm temper of his moving ſpirits; but that where there is any tem perate goverment, there he withſtandeth all effects of ſick neſſe, with an uncontrouled conſtancy. He is moſt gentl and loving to the Man, apt to be taught and not forgetful whe an impreſſion is fixed in his brain. He is watchful above other beaſts, and will endure his labour with the moſt em ty ſtomach; he is naturally given to much cleanlineſs, is an excellent ſcent, and offended with nothing ſo much as e ſavours.

choice of es, and r ſhapes

Now for the choice of the beſt Horſe, it is divers, acc ding to the uſe for which you will employ him. If theref you would have a Horſe for the Warres, you ſhall chuſe hi that is of a good tall ſtature, with a comely lean head, an ou ſwelling forehead, a large ſparkling eye, the white wher is covered with the eyebrows, and not at all diſcerned, or i all, yet the leaſt is beſt; a ſmall thin ear ſhort and pricki if it be long, well carried and ever moving, it is tolerabl but if dull or hanging, moſt hateful: a deep neck, large creſt broad breſt, bending ribs, broad and ſtreight chine, rou and full buttock, with his huckle-bones hid, a tayle high a broad, ſet on neither too thick, nor too thin; for too mu hair ſhews ſloath, and too little, too much choller and hea a full ſwelling thigh, a broad, flat, and lean leg, ſhort p. ſtern'd, ſtrong joynted, and hollow bones, of which the lo is beſt, if they be not wier'd, and the broad round worſt.

The beſt colours are Bown-bay, Daple-gray, Roan, Bri ay, Black, with a white near foot behind, white far foot bef white rache, or white ſtar, Cheſnut or Sorrel, with any of t marks, or Dun with a black liſt: And of theſe horſes, for Wars the Courſer of *Naples* is accounted the beſt, then the *main*, the *Sardinian*, or the *French*.

If you would chuſe a Horſe for a Princes Seat, any ſupr

Magistrate, or for any great Lady of State, or woman of eminence you shall chuse him that is of the finest shape, the best rein, who naturally bears his head in the best place, without the help of the mans hand; that is of nimblest and easiest pace, gentle to get upon, bold without making affrights, and most familiar and quiet in the company of other Horses: his colour would ever be milk-white, with red frains, or without, or else fair daple gray with white Mane, and white Tayle: And of these the *English* is best, then the *Hungarian*, the *Sweathland*, the *Poland*, the *Irish*.

Horses for Travel.

If you will chuse a Horse only for travel, ever the better shape the better hope, especially look that his head be lean, eyes swelling outward, his neck well risen, his chine well risen, his joynts very strong; but above all his pasterns short and straight, without bending in his going, and exceeding hollow and tough hoofs: let him be of a temperate nature, neither too furious, nor too dull, willing to go without forcing, and not desirous to run when there is no occasion.

Hunting horses.

If you would chuse a Horse for hunting, let his shape in general be strong, and well knit together, making equal proportions; for as unequal shape shew weakness, so equal members assure strength and indurance. Your unequal shapes are a great head to a little neck, a big body to a thin buttock, a large limb to a little foot, or any of these contraries, or where any member suits not with the whole proportion of the body, or with any limb next adjoyning. Above all let your hunting Horse have a large lean head, wide nostrils, open chauld, a big weasand, and the windpipe straight, loose, well covered, and not bent in the pride of his Reining: The English Hore, bastardized with any of the former Races first spoke of, is of all the best.

Running horse.

If you chuse a Horse for running, let him have all the finest shape that may be, but above all things, let him be nimble, quick and fiery, apt to fly with the least motion: long shapes are sufferable, for though they shew weakness, yet they assure sudden speed. And the best Horse for this use, is the *Arabian*, *Barbary*, or his bastard, Jennets are good, but the Turks are better.

If

Coach-horse. If you will chuse a Horse for the Coach, which is called the swift draught, let his shape be tall, broad, and well furnisht, not grosse with much flesh, but with the bigneſſe of his bones, especially look if he have a strong neck, a broad breast, a large chine, sound clean limbs, and tough hooves: and for this purpose, your large English Geldings are best, your Flemish Mares next, and your strong Ston'd Horses tolerable, *Flemish* or *Frisons.*

Pack-horses. If you will chuse a Horse for Portage, that is for the Pack or Hampers, chuse him that is exceeding strong of Body and Limbs, but not tall, with a broad back, out ribs, full shoulders and thick withers; for if he be thin in that part, you shall hardly keep his back from galling: be sure that he take a strong stride with his feet, for their pace being neither trot nor amble, but only a foot pace, he which takes the largest strides goes at the most ease, and rids his ground fastest.

Cart-horses. Lastly, if you will chuse a Horse for the Cart or Plough, which is the slow draught, chuse him of the most ordinary height, for Horses in the Cart unequally sorted, never draw at ease, but the tall hang up the low Horse. Let them be of good strong portion, big breasted, large bodied, and strong limb'd, by nature rather inclin'd to crave the whip, than to draw more than is needful. And for this purpose Mares are most profitable; for besides, the effecting of your work, they yearly bring you forth increase: therefore if you furnish your draught with Mares to breed, observe in a wise, to have them fair fore-handed, that is good neck, brea and shoulders; for the rest it is not so regardful, only let he dy be large; for the bigger room a Foal hath in the dams bel fairer are his members. And above all things observe n put your draught beasts to the Saddle, for that alters their p and hurts them in their labours.

Of Mares.

Now for the ordering of these several Horses: first for Horse for service, during the time of his teaching, which is of the Wars, you shall keep him high and lustily; his food, Straw but good Hay, his provender clean dry Oats, or two p Oats, and one part Beans, or Peaſe, well dried and hard, the q tity of half a peck at a watering, morning, noon, and evenin sufficient.

In his daies of rest, you shall dress him betwixt five and six in the morning, water betwixt seven and eight, and feed from nine till after eleven: in the afternoon, you shall dress betwixt three and four, water betwixt four and five, and give provender till six, then litter at eight, and give food for all night. The night before he is ridden, you shall at nine of the clock at night take away his hay from him; at four of the clock in the morning give him a handful or two of Oats, which being eaten, turn him upon his snaffle, rub all his body and legs over with dry cloaths, then saddle him, and make him fit for his exercise. Soon as he is cal'd for to be ridden, wash his bit in fair water, and put it into his mouth with all other things necessary, draw up his girths, and see that no buckles hurt him: then lead him forth, and as soon as he hath been ridden, all sweating as he is, lead him into the stable; & first rub him quickly over with dry wisps, then take off his saddle, and having rubb'd him all over with dry cloaths, put on his housing cloath, then set on the saddle again, and girt it: then lead him forth, and walk him up and down in gentle manner an hour or more, till he be cold, then set him up, *and after two or three hours fasting*, turn him to his meat: then in the afternoon, curb, rub and dress him, then water him, and order him as is aforesaid.

Ordering of horses for a Princes seat.

For ordering of the Horse for a Prince, or great Ladies seat, *let it be in his time of rest, like unto the horse for service: and in his time of labour like the travelling horse, as shall be shewed instantly: only because he is to be more choicely kept, I mean in the beautifullest manner, his coat lying smooth, and shining, and his whole body without any stain or ilfavouredness*; you shall ever when he hath been ridden, and commeth in much sweating, presently have him into the stable, and first rub him down with clean wisps, then taking off his saddle, with a Sword-blade whose edge is rebated; you shall streak his neck and body clean over, leaving no sweat nor filth that can be gotten out; *then cloath him up, and set on the saddle, and walk him forth as aforesaid.* After, order and diet him as you do other travelling Horses: dry Oats is his best provender, if he be fat and full, and Oats and Beans, if he be poor, or subject to lose his flesh quickly.

Ordering of travelling horses.

For your travelling horse, you shall feed him with the finest hay

hay in the Winter, and the sweetest grass in Summer: His Provender will be dry Oats, Beans, Pease or Bread, according to his stomach: in the time of rest, half a peck at a watering is sufficient; in the time of his labour, as much as he will eat with a good stomach. When you travel, water him two hours before you Ride; then rub, dress, and lastly feed: then bridle up, and let him stand an hour before you take his back. Travel moderately in the morning till his wind be rack't, and his limbs warmed, then after do as your affairs require. Be sure at night to water your Horse two miles before you come to your journeys end, then the warmer you bring him to his Inn, the better: walk not, nor wash not at all, the one doth beget colds, the other foundring in the feet or body: but set him up warm, well stopt, and soundly rub'd with clean litter. Give no meat whilst the outward parts of your Horse are hot or wet with sweat, as the ear roots, the flanks, the neck, or under his chaps: but being dry, rub and feed him according to the goodness of his stomach. Change of food begetteth a stomach, so doth the washing of the tongue or nostrils with vinegar, wine and salt, or warm urine. Stop not your Horses forefeet with Cows dung, till he be sufficiently cold, and that the blood and humours which were dispersed, be setled into their proper places. Look well to his back, that the saddle hurt not, to the girths that they gall not, and to his shooes, that they be large, fast, and easie.

Ordering of hunting horses.

For the ordering of your Hunting-horse, let him in the time of his rest, have all the quietness that may be, much litter, much meat, and much dressing, water ever by him, and leave him to sleep as long as he pleaseth. Keep him to dung, rather soft than hard, and look that it be well coloured, and bright, for darkness shews grease, and redness inward heating. After exercises, let mashes of sweet mault, be his usual scourings; and let bread of clean beans, or beans and wheat equally mixt, be his best food, and beans and oats the most ordinary.

Ordering of running horses

For the ordering of your running Horse, let him have no more meat than to suffice nature, drink once in four and twenty hours, and dressing every day once, at Noon only. Let him have much moderate exercise, as Morning and Evening ayrings, or the fetching of his water, and know no violence but in his courses only.

Let

Let him stand dark and warm, have many cloaths, and much litter, being wheat straw only. If he be very fat, scour oft; if of reasonable state, scour seldome; if lean, then scour but with a sweet mash only. Be sure your horse be empty before he course; and let his food be the finest, lightest, and quickest of digestion that may be: the sweats are more wholsome that are given abroad, and the cooling most natural which is given before he come into the stable. Keep his limbs with cool oyntments, and by no means, let any hot spices come into his body: if he grow dry inwardly, wash't meat is very wholsome. If he grow loose, then give him straw in more abundance. Burning of sweet perfume in the stale is wholsome; and any thing you either do about your horse, or give unto your horse, the more neat, cleanly, and sweet it is, the better it nourisheth.

Ordering of Coach-horses.

For ordering the Coach-horse, let him have good dressing twice a day, Hay and Provender his belly full, and Litter enough to tumble on, and he cannot chuse but prosper. Let him be walk't and wash't after travel, for by reason of their many occasions to stand still, they must be inur'd to all hardness, though it be much unwholsome. Their best food is sweet Hay, and well dried Beans and Oats, or Bean-bread: Look well to the strength of their shooes, and the galling of their Harness. Keep their leggs clean, especially about the hinder feet-locks, and when they are in the house, let them stand warm cloathed.

Ordering of the Pack and Cart-horse.

For the ordering of the Pack-horse, or the Cart-horse, they need no washing, walking, or hours of fasting; only dress them well, look to their shooes and backs, and then fill their bellies, and they will do their labour. The best food is sweet Hay, Chaff, or Pease or Oat hulls and Pease, or chopt straw, and Pease mixt together, once a week to give them warm Grains and Salt, is not amiss, for their labour will prevent the breeding of worms, or such like mischiefs.

For the preservation of all horses.

Now for the general preservation of horses health, it is good whilst a horse is in youth and strength to let him blood twice in the year, that is, beginning of the Spring, and beginning or the Fall, when you may best afford him a weeks rest. After you have let him blood two daies after, give him a comfortable drench, as 2 spoonfuls of *Diapente*, or such like, which is called *Horse-Mithridate*,

date, in a quart of ſtrong Ale. Uſe oft to perfume his head with Frankincenſe, and in the heat of Summer, uſe oft to ſwim him. Let a fat Horſe drink oft, and a little at once, and a lean Horſe whenſoever he hath appetite. Much rubbing is comfortable, and cheareth every member. Be ſure to let your Horſe eat graſs once in a year, for that cooleth the blood, ſcours away groſs humours, and gives great ſtrength and nouriſhment to the body. If notwithſtanding all theſe principles, your Horſe fall into ſickneſs and diſeaſe, then look into the Chapters following, and you ſhall finde the trueſt, beſt approved, and the moſt familiar medicines for all manner of infirmities, that ever were known or publiſhed except my *Maſter-piece*.

CHAP. II.

Of Riding in general, and of the particular knowledges belonging to the Art of Riding of a great Horſe, or Horſe for ſervice, or Pleaſure.

HAving ſpoken ſomething already of horſes, it now follows, we ſay ſomething of the commendable exerciſe of riding great Horſes, which in the very action it ſelf ſpeaketh Gentleman, to all that are performers or doers of the ſame. And though our Engliſh Gentry from a ſloath in their induſtry, aim for the moſt part at no more skill than the riding, of a ridden and perfect Horſe, which is but only the ſetting forth of another mans vertue, and thereby making themſelves richer in diſcourſe than action: yet our Engliſh Husbandman, or good-man whom I ſeek to make exact, and perfect in all things, ſhall not only recreate himſelf by Riding the horſes whom the other men have made perfect, but ſhall by his own practiſe bring his Horſe from utter ignorance, to the beſt skill that can be deſired in his motions: wherein he ſhall finde a two-fold pleaſure, the one an excellent contentment to his minde, that he can perform ſo worthy an action, without the chargeable aſſiſtance of others, and the other beneficial ſupport to his body, when by ſuch recreation, his ſpirits

The pleaſure of riding.

spirits and inward faculties are revived and inflamed.

But now me-thinks, I hear some say, that I have utterly taken away the tune of this string, I have stricken so oft upon it, and that indeed there can be no delight where there is no variation: and that surely I cannot vary any more upon this plain Song, but the World would finde discord either in this, or my former descants. But let them not deceive themselves, for my building standeth on a firm Rock, and I know both shall be worthily justifiable: only this I must inform all men, that in times past, long since, when our first rules of Horsemanship were given unto us, our Masters were not so skilful in the abilities of Horse-performances as we are, but measur'd them by the proportions of their own weaker natures, and therefore became so too much tender over them, that they respected neither the greatness of their own labours, nor the length of time before they arrived to their desires, so in the end they might aspire to their wishes with safety and full satisfaction: whence it came to pass, that in those times, and even now in these, chiefly amongst those which are meerly Riders, and no Keepers, there is no less time allowed to the making up of a perfect Horse, then two years; when we know, and my self from experience can justifie the same, that if the Rider can keep as well as Ride, that is, give as well directions for the preservation of a Horses health, and the avoidance of sorances and sickness, as put in practice artfully, every violence to be used in his Lessons, he may very well make up a perfect Horse in three months, fit either for pleasure or battel, which is the full scope and end of this Treatise: wherein I would not have any man expect either new Rules; or contradiction of any already set down by men of practice, and knowledge in the Art, but only a straightning or drawing of them together into a much narrower compass, giving satisfaction to our desires, and finishing up our work with speed, which before was almost lost or neglected, with the length of our labours, as you shall fully perceive by this discourse which followeth. The Riders Apology.

First, then to speak of the taming of a young Colt, which is as it were the preface or introduction to the art of riding: You shall after he hath been in the house a week or a fortnight, and is familiar with the man, and will withal patiently indure curry- The taming of a young Colt.

rying,

rying, combing, rubbing, clawing and handling in every part and member of his body, without any ſhew of rebellion or knaviſhneſs, which you ſhall compaſs by all gentle and eaſie means, doing nothing about him ſuddenly or raſhly, but with leiſure and moderation: then you ſhall offer him a ſaddle, which you ſhall ſet in the manger before him, that he may ſmell to it, and look upon it, and you ſhall gingle the girths and ſtirrops about his ears, to make him careleſs of the noiſe, then withall gentleneſs after you have rub'd his ſides therewithal, you ſhall ſet it on his back, and gird it gently on, and then place his Crooper with all eaſe, which done, you ſhall take a ſweet watring trench, waſh't, and anointed with honey and ſalt, and put it into his mouth, placing it to hang directly about his tuſh, and as it were a little leaning thereupon: this you ſhall do in the morning as ſoon as you have dreſt him, and then thus ſadled and bridled, you ſhall lead him forth, and water him in your hand abroad: then bringing him in, and after he hath ſtood a little reined upon his trench an hour or more, take away the bridle and ſadle, and let him go to his meat till the Evening: then lead him forth as before with the ſadle to the water, then when he is ſet up gently, take off his ſadle and cheriſh him, and then dreſs him, and cloath him up for all night.

His ſadling and bridling.

The next day ſadle and bridle him as before ſaid, and put on him a ſtrong muſrole of writhen Iron, or a ſharp Cavezan and Martingal, which you ſhall buckle at ſuch length, that he may no more but feel it when he jerketh up his head, and then lead him forth into ſome new plowed field, or ſoft ground; and there after you have made him trot a good ſpace about in your hand, and thereby taken away from him all his wantonneſs and knaviſh diſtractions, you ſhall offer your foot to the ſtirrop; at wh ch if he ſhew any diſtaſte; either in body or countenance, you ſhall then courſe him about again: then offer again; and with leiſure riſe half way up, and go down again: at which if he ſhrink, correct him as before, but if he take it patiently, then cheriſh him, and ſo mount into the ſadle, which done, after cheriſhing light down again, and give him bread or graſs to eat: then look that your girths be well girted and ſtreight: that the Crooper be ſtrong and of juſt length, that the bridle hang even, and in his due place, with-

The firſt backing.

without inward or outward offence, that your ſtirrops be fit, and generally all things, without offence either to your ſelf or to the beaſt, and then as before, mount his back, ſeat your ſelf juſt and even in the ſaddle, make the reins of your bridle of equal length, carry your rod without offence to his eye in your right hand, the point either directly upright, or thwarted towards your left ſhoulder: Then having cheriſht him, let the Groom which before led him, having his hand on the chaff halter, lead him forward a dozen or twenty paces, then gently ſtraining your hand, with the help of the foot-man make him ſtand ſtill then cheriſh him, and lead him forward again, and do this five or ſix times one after another, till by continual uſe, you make him of your own accord, (without the foot-mans help) by giving your body, and thruſting your legs forward, go forward; which as ſoon as he doth, you ſhall ſtay him, and cheriſh him, and then ſitting on his back, let your foot-man lead him home, and bring him to the block, where after you have cheriſht him, you ſhall gently alight, and cauſe him to be ſet up, and well dreſt, and meated. The next day you ſhall bring him forth as before, and in all points, take his back, as aforeſaid, and ſo by the help of the foot-man, trot fore-right half a mile at leaſt; then let the foot-man lay off his hand, and walk by him, till you have of your ſelf trotted him forth another half mile, then cheriſh him, and make the foot-man give him ſome graſs or bread to eat, and then taking a large compaſs, trot him home, and bring him to the block as before, and there alight, and ſo ſet him up.

The third day let your foot-man light upon ſome ſpare Jade, and then bringing your Colt to the block, take his back gently, and after you have cheriſht him, the other riding before you, follow him forth-right a mile, ever and anon at the end of twenty or thirty ſcore, ſtopping the Colt gently, cheriſhing him, and making him yield, and go back a ſtep or two, and then putting him forward again, till he be ſo perfect, that with the leaſt motion he will go forward, ſtop and retire, which will be effected in two daies more; in which ſpace, if he chance at any time to ſtrike or rebel, you ſhall make him which rides before you, take the ſpare reyn, and lead him forward; whilſt you give him two or three good laſhes under the belly, and then being in his way, take the

ſpare

ſpare reyn to your ſelfagain: and thus you ſhall do, till all faults be amended: then you ſhall ſpare your horſman, or guide, and only by your ſelf for three or four daies more, trot him every morning and afternoon, at leaſt a mile or two forward, uſing him only to ſtop or retire, and bringing him home a contrary way to that you went forth, till he be ſo perfect and willing, that he will take his way, how or in what manner your ſelf pleaſeth, ever obſerving to mount and diſmount at the block only, except ſome ſpecial occaſion conſtrain you to the contrary.

This you may very well bring to paſs, the firſt week of the Horſes riding.

The three main points of a horſemans skill.

As ſoon as you ſee your Horſe will receive you to his back, trot fore-right, ſtop, and retire, and do all this with great patience and obedience; you ſhall then call into your mind the three main points of a Horſemans knowledge, which are helps, corrections, and cheriſhings. And for helps, they conſiſt in theſe: Firſt the voice, which ſoundeth ſharply and cheerfully, crying, *via, how, ley*, and ſuch like, adds a ſpirit & livelineſs to the Horſe, and lends a great help to all his motions: then the bridle, which reſtrained, or at liberty, helps him how to do, and ſhews which way to do.

Then the Rod which being only ſhewed, is a help to direct; being only moved, helps the quickneſs and nimbleneſs of the motion; and being gently toucht withall, helps the loftineſs of a Horſes ſalts and leaps, and makes him as it were gather all his ſtrength into one point; and laſtly, the calves of the legs, ſtirrop Leathers, and ſtirrops, which moved by the horſes ſide, helps him to nimbleneſs, ſwiftneſs, and readineſs in turning. Some to theſe helps, adde the help of the Spur, chiefly in high ſalts or boundings, but it muſt be done in a juſt and true time, and with ſuch gentle bitterneſs, that the horſe may underſtand it for a help, or elſe he will take diſtaſte, and finding it favour like correction, inſtead of bettering his doings, do with more diſorder, as to ſpraul with his fore-feet in advancing, to yerk out with one or both his hinder feet in the corveit or bounding, ſhaking of his head and ſuch like, as will appear in practiſe.

Of Corrections and which they be.

Now of Corrections, the moſt principle is the ſpur, which muſt

muſt not at any time be given triflingly or itchingly, but ſoundly and ſharply, as oft as juſt occaſion ſhall require: then the Rod which upon diſorder, ſloth or miſcarriage of the Members, muſt be given alſo ſoundly: then the voyce which being delivered ſharply and roughly, as *ha villain, carridro, diablo*, and ſuch like threatnings terrifieth the Horſe, and maketh him afraid to diſobey: And laſtly, the Bridle which now and then ſtricken with a hard check in his Mouth, reformeth many vices and diſtemperatures of his Head: yet this laſt muſt be done ſeldome, and with great diſcretion, for to make a Cuſtome thereof, is the ready way to ſpoyle a Horſes Mouth.

Now of Cheriſhings, there are generally in uſe but three, as Of cheriſhing
firſt the voyce, which being delivered ſmoothly and lovingly, as crying, *boll a ſo boy, there boy there*, and ſuch like, gives the Horſe both cheerfulneſs of Spirit, and a knowledge that hee hath done well; then the hand by clapping him gently on the Neck or Buttock, or giving him Graſs, or other Food to eat, after he hath pleaſed you: and laſtly the big end of the Rod, by rubbing him therewith upon the withers or maine, which is very pleaſing and delightfull to the Horſe.

Now after theſe ordinary and uſual helps, corrections, and Of the Muſ-
cheriſhings, you ſhall have reſpect to the Muſrole or Cavezen and role and Mar-
Martingale, which carry in them all the three former both ſeve- tingale.
ral and unite, for it is firſt an eſpecial help and guide to every well diſpoſed Horſe, for ſetting of his Head in a true place, forming of his Rein, and making him appear comely and gallant in the Eyes of the beholders; then it is a ſharp correction when a Horſe yerketh out his Noſe, or diſordereth his Head any way or ſtriveth to plunge or run away with his Rider: And laſtly it is a great cheriſhing unto the Beaſt, when he yeildeth his Head to your hand, by ſhrinking from his Face, and ſo leaving any more to torment him, but when he offendeth: whence it comes that more from this than any thing elſe, the Horſe firſt gaineth the knowledge of his Maſters will, and is deſirous to perform it: therefore you ſhall be very careful to the placing of this upon the Horſe; as firſt that it hang ſomwhat low, and reſt upon the tender Griſſel of the Horſes Noſe, whereby corrections may be the ſharper when occaſion require it; then that it be looſe

and not ſtraight, whereby the Horſe may feel, upon the yielding in of his Head how the offence goeth from him, and ſo know that only his own diſorder is his own puniſhment. Laſtly, he ſhall be careful to note how he winneth the Horſes Head, and by thoſe degrees to draw his Martingale ſtrainer and ſtraiter, ſo as the Horſe may ever have a gentle feeling of the ſame, and no more; till his Head and Rein be brought to that perfection that you deſire, and then there to ſtay, and keep the Martingale conſtantly in that place only, which you ſhall perform in thoſe few days which you trot your Horſe forth-right, being before you bring him to any Leſſon, more then the knowledge of your ſelf, and how to receive you to his back, and trot forth obediently with you.

Of treading the large ring.

When your Horſe is brought unto ſome certainty of Rein, will trot forth-right with you at your pleaſure, and by your former exerciſe therein is brought to breath and delight in his travell, *which will grow and encreaſe upon him, as you grow and encreaſe in your labour*, then you ſhall bring him to the treading forth of the large Rings in this manner: Firſt, *if he be of heavy and ſluggiſh nature, and ſloathful and dull, and albeit he have ſtrength and ſufficiency of Body, yet you find him ſlovenly and unapt, then you ſhall trot him in ſome new plowed field, ſoft and deep: But if he be of quick and of a fiery Spirit, apt, nimble, and ready to learn, then you ſhall trot him in ſome ſandy or gravelly place, where is ſtrong and firm foot hold, and there you ſhall mark out a ſpacious large Ring, at leaſt threeſcore or fourſcore paces in compaſs*, and having walked him ſix or ſeven times about the ſame on your right hand, you ſhall then by a little ſtraitening of your right Rein, and laying the Calfe of your left Leg to his ſide making a half circle within your Ring upon your right hand, down to the center or midpoynt thereof, and then by ſtraitning of your left Rein a little, and laying the Calfe of your right Leg to his ſide, making another half circle to your left hand from the center to the outmoſt verge, which two half circles contrary turned, will make a perfect Roman S. within the Ring; then keeping your firſt large circumference, walk your Horſe about on your left hand, as oft as you did on your right, and then change within your Ring as you did before to your right hand again, and then trot him firſt

Choice of ground.

on

on the right hand, then on the left, so long as you shall think convenient, and although our ancient Masters in this Art have prescribed unto us certain numbers of Ring turns, and how oft it is meet to go about on either hand, as if all Horses were of one even ability; yet I would wish you neglect those Rules, and only to practise your Horse in this Lesson, according to his strength of his Body, sometimes applying him therein an hour, sometimes two, and sometimes three, more or less according to your discretion: for the space of time can neither bring wearinesse nor tyring: and for your change of hands, you shall do it as oft as shall seem best to your self, being ever very careful to give him the most exercise, and that hand on which he is ever most unwilling to go; and in this Lesson be careful also that he do it cheerfully, lustily, nimbly, quickning and inflaming his Spirits by all means possible, and when you finde that he will trot his large Rings perfectly, which will questionless be in less then a weeks space, being well applied therein, for you must not fore-slow any morning except the Sabbath, hardly any afternoon also, if you find him sloathful and heavy, for there is no greater hinderance then the Riders too much tenderness, nor no greater furtherance then a continual moderate exercise. Therefore as I said when he will trot his Rings well, then in the same manner, and with the same changes, you shall make him gallop the same Rings, which he shall do also with great dexterity, lightness, and much nimbleness, without losing the least part or grace of his best Rein: Nay, so careful you shall be thereof, that in this galloping, you shall as it were gather his body together, and make his Rein rather better then it was, and make him take up his Feet so truly and loftily, that not any Eye may see or perceive a falshood in his stroke, but that his inward Feet play before his outward, and each of a side follow the other so directly, that his gallop may appear as the best grace of all his motions: neither shall you enter him into this Lesson rashly and hastily, but soberly, and with discretion, making him first gallop a quarter of the Ring, then half, then three parts, and lastly the whole Ring: neither shall you force him into his Ring with violence or the sharpness of Spurs, but with Spirit and Mettal, making him by the lightness and cheerfulness of your own Body,

Of Galloping large Rings.

pass of his own accord into his gallop, and especially in his changes, where you may let him feel your Legge, and shew him your Rod on the contrary side: and herein is to be noted, that continually those changes (in as much as they are made in a much straighter compass) must be done ever with great quickness, and more stirring nimbleness then entire lessons.

Helps in the large Ring-turns.

Now for the helps necessary in these large Ring-turnes, they consist generally in the *Voice*, *Rod*, *Calves* of your Legs, and the *Bridle*; In the *Voice* by quickning him up, and reviving his Spirits when he grows sloathful, with these words, *How hey*, or *via*: In the *Rod*, by shewing it him on the contrary side, or laying it on the contrary Shoulder, and sometimes by shaking it over his Head, which is a kind of threatning, cheifly when you make your changes. In the Calves of your Legs, when you clap them hard to the contrary side to which he turneth, or springing and jerking your Legs forward, hard upon your Stirrop leathers, which will quicken him and make him gather up his Limbs better than the spur by many degrees: And lastly, in the Bridle, by drawing it in a little straiter, and holding it with some more constancy, when you put any of your former helps in use, or do any thing with more life or courage, for that maketh him draw his Limbs together, and so straiten his Rings with gracely comliness.

Corrections in the Ring-turns.

For the Corrections in these large Rings, they be divers; as namely, the Bridle, the Spur, and the Rod, and sometimes the voyce, yet that but seldome; for the Bridle, you shall correct your Horse therewith if he carry his Head or Chaps awry, making as it were Mouths and ill-favoured countenances, giving him now and then a little check in the Mouth, and awaking him from such forgetful passions, or now and then drawing the trench to and fro in his Mouth, which will reform the errour; then the Spur which must be laid sharp and hard to his sides, when you find your helps will do no good, but that his sloath rather more and more encreaseth, or when he presseth and hangeth hard upon your hand or looseth the tutch of his rein, or such like vices; for the Rod, when you find that he neglecteth the shewing or shaking of it, or when he disordereth any of his hinder parts and will not gather them up comely together, then you shall therewith give him a sound lash or two under the Belly, or over the contrary Shoulder, and to any of these former Corrections

you

you ſhall ever accompany the threatning of your voyce, when the fault is too much fou e, and no otherwiſe, becauſe there ſhould be ever entire love betwixt the Horſe and the Horſe-man, which continually chiding will either take away or at leaſt root out the apprehenſion thereof.

Now for your Cheriſhings, they are thoſe which I formerly ſpake of; only they muſt be uſed at no time but when your Hor.e doth well, and hath pleaſed your mind, both with his cunning and tractableneſs: although the time for the ſame be when he hath finiſhed his Leſſons, yet there is a ſecret pleaſing and cheriſhing of a Horſe with the Bridle, which muſt be exerciſed in the doing of his Leſſons, and that is the ſweetning of his Mouth by a little ceaſing of your Bridle hand, and gently drawing it up back again, letting it come and go with ſuch unperceiving motion, that none but the Beaſt may know it. Cheriſhings in his Ring-turns.

When your Horſe can trot and gallop your large Rings with all perfectneſs, which with good induſtry will be perfected in leſs than a fortnights exerciſe, you ſhall then proceed to make him ſtop fair, comely, and without danger, which you ſhall do in this manner: Firſt, as ſoon as you have taken his back, cheriſh him, put him gently forward, and bring him into a ſwift trot: after you have trotted him forty or threeſcore yards forward, you ſhall by drawing in your Bridle hand ſtraitly and ſuddenly, make him gather his hinder Leggs and fore-Legs together, and ſo in an inſtant ſtand ſtill, which as ſoon as he doth, immediately you ſhall eaſe your hand a little, yet not ſo much as may give him liberty to preſs forward, but rather to yeild backward, which if you finde he doth, you ſhall give him more liberty, and cheriſh him, and then having paſſed a while, draw in your Bridle-hand, and make him go back two or three paces, at which if he ſtrike, inſtantly eaſe your hand, and draw it up again, letting him come and go till hee yeild and go backward, which (for the moſt part) all Horſes at the firſt will do: but if it be that your Horſe rebel and will not go back with this gentle admonition, you ſhall then cauſe a Foot-man ſtanding by to put him back with his hand, and in this motion, you ſhall cheriſh him, that he may underſtand what your will is. And thus every time you make him ſtop, you ſhall make him retire back, till in one ſpace of time you have made both Of ſtopping and going back.

Leſſons

Leſſons perfect : and this practiſe you ſhall uſe both till you come to your large Rings, and at every time that you finiſh your Leſſon, or give the Horſe breath or eaſe, whereby you ſhall perceive that your Horſe ſhall learn to trot and gallop the large Rings, to ſtop and retire back all in one ſpace of time, becauſe you ſee ſucceſſively they follow one another, and are to be done (though three) but as one entire Leſſon.

Helps. Now for the helps in theſe Leſſons, the beſt for ſtopping is the choice of ground, as by making your Horſe ever to ſtop down the ſloap of ſome hil, or deſcending ground, whereby he may be compell'd to couch his hinder loyns the better, and ſo make him ſtop moſt comely, and to obſerve that the ground be firm and hard, without danger of ſliding, leſt the Horſe finding ſuch an imperfection grow fearful, and ſo refuſe to do your will out of his own danger, In retiring you ſhall help him with your Rod, by putting it before his Breſt, or ſhaking it before his Knees, to make him remove his Feet more quick and nimbly.

Corrections For Corrections in ſtopping, it muſt ſometimes be done by your ſelf, as with the even ſtroke of your Spurs, when in his ſtop he diſordered his Head, or with any one ſingle Spur, when he caſteth out his hinder loyns, and will not ſtop right in an even line ; and ſometimes it muſt be done by another by-ſtander, where he refuſeth to ſtop at all, who ſtanding at the place of ſtop, as ſoon as you draw up your hand, ſhall with his Rod threaten the Horſe and make him not dare to preſs forward, or if he do preſs forward, to make him retire ſwiftly back ſo much ground as he gained, both your ſelf and the by-ſtander, rating him with your voices extreamly : for corrections in retiring, they are the even ſtrokes of both your Spurs, when he ſticks or preſſes upon your hand, and will not yeild back ; and alſo your Rod ſtruck ſharply on his Knees and Breaſt, and Rod of a by-ſtander ſtruck upon his Breſt, Knees and Face, when his ſtubbornneſs is too violent.

Cheriſhings. But for his cheriſhings, they be all formerly ſpoke of, when your will is comely and obediently performed, beſides the addition of ſome other, as a preſent eaſing of your Bridle hand, and the ſuffering and cheriſhing of the by-ſtander, and ſo offering him to ſtand and recover breath a good ſpace after.

Wher

When your Horſe can ſtop and retire well, which may be done in the ſame ſpace that you teach him in his large Ring turns, for it is as it were three Leſſons learn'd in one; you ſhall then teach him to advance before when he ſtoppeth, which is very comely and graceful to the beholders; and you ſhall do it in this manner: After you have ſtopped your Horſe, without giving your hand any eaſe you ſhall lay the Calves of both your Legs hard to his ſides, and add thereto the noiſe of the ſhaking of your Rod, and your voice, by crying *up, up*, which will at firſt (peradventure) but a little amaze him, becauſe he underſtandeth not your meaning: Therefore you ſhall put him forward again, and do as before, and that with a little more ſtrength, continuing the practiſe of the ſame till you perceive hee taketh one Foot from the earth, then cheriſh him a little, and ſo to the Leſſons again, till hee taketh up both his Legs from the ground which when he doth, orderly or diſorderly, yet cheriſh him exceedingly, that he may come to the knowledge of your meaning, without which all your labour is loſt; then to your former practiſe again, till you have brought him to that perfectneſs, that he will with all readineſs advance as oft as you will give him the Calves of your Legs to his ſides, be it leſs or more times together: this done, you ſhall look to the orderly and comlineſs of his advancing: As firſt, that he takes up his Legs both even together, and bend them inward towards his Body; then that he advance not too high (for fear of comming over upon you) but couch his hinder loyns cloſe to the ground; then that he ſprauleth not, nor paweth with his Feet forward; and laſtly that hee advance not for his own pleaſure, but when you command him by your own direct and orderly motions, for the contrary is a foul fault in Horſemanſhip. Of advancing before.

For helps in this Leſſon, they are the Calves of your Legs, the ſhaking of your Rod over his Head, and your voyce, as is before ſaid, and the deſcent of ſome hanging ground, which will make his hinder loyns couch the better. Helps.

The Corrections are according to the nature of offences, as the even ſtroke of your Spurs, or a good laſh with your Rod, when you ſee, hee fixeth his Feet to the ground, and ſtubbornly applyes himſelf to diſobey you, or will take up his Feet one after another, Corrections,

ther, and not both together. If he do advance too high, so as he is ready to come over upon you, or if hee spraule or paw forth with his feet, you shall not then only give him both your spurs hard together, but also a good jerke or two with your Rod between his ears: but if he advance when you would not have him, you shall then in the same instant jerke him over both the knees with your Rod; and if he advance again, jerke him again, not ceasing till he fix his feet to the ground, or go backward, and then cherish him.

Cherishings

For particular cherishings in this Lesson, they are no other than those former spoke of, onely they must be done with a more ready watchfulness, in the very instant and moment of time, in which he performeth any thing well, that the Horse may understand why, and wherefore he receiveth such contentment, and thereby be incouraged to continue in his goodness, and be more ready to apprehend his Riders pleasure.

The use of advancing.

For the use of advancing, it is twofold; as namely, to give a grace to his other Lessons, and to bring his Body to nimbleness: yet for the most part it is only us'd at the stop; where when you have finish'd any Lesson, if then concluding with the stop, you make him advance, once, twice or thrice, it will be both a grace to the Beast, and shew much art in the Horseman: also it maketh a Horse apt and ready to turn well, and making him trust to his hinder Legs, whereby his fore parts may be directed and governed at the Horsemans pleasure.

Of yerking behind.

Next to advancing, you shall teach your Horse to yerke behind, in this manner: When at any time you have made him stop, you shall presently with your Rod give him a good jerk under the Belly near to his flanke, which though at the first hee apprehended not, yet by a continuall and constant use thereof you shall in the end bring him to yerk out his hinder Legs; at the first doing whereof, you shall cherish him, for that is the only language by which he knoweth he doth your will, and then having paused a little, make him to do it again, encreasing it every day, and doubling his doings, till he be so ready, that when you please to give the jerke, he will then give the yerk, and then you shall look to the comelinesse of his doings, that is to say, that he yerk not out his hinder-Legs, till his fore-Legs be above the ground

ground, then that he yerk not one Leg farther out then the other, but both even together; then that he yerk not too high, and lastly, that he yerk not one Leg out whileſt the other is on the ground, all which are errours of great groſsneſs. Therefore to make the Horſe more perfect in this Leſſon, it ſhall be good to teach him to yerk out behind, when he ſtandeth in the Stable, by jerking him on the buttocks with your Rod, and not ceaſing to moleſt him till he raiſe up his rump above the ground, and then to cheriſh him, and ſo to apply him without any eaſe and reſt, till he doth your will; that when he is perfect to put the ſame in practiſe when you are in the field on his back, by turning your Rod in your hand to his Buttock-ward, and touching him therewith, to make him yerk as aforeſaid.

For the helps, they are the conſtant ſtaying his Mouth on the Bridle, the ſtroke of your Rod under his Belly, or the gentle touching him upon the rump with the ſame. Helps.

The corrections are only the even ſtroak of your Spurs, when either he refuſeth to yerk, or yerketh out diſorderly, or out of malice; or the Single Spur on that ſide on which he yerketh out moſt diſorderly: and laſtly, a reſtleſs holding of him to the Leſſon, not giving him any reſt or eaſe, till he doth in that manner which you can wiſh. Corrections.

Then for his cheriſhings, they are all thoſe formerly mentioned, being beſtowed upon him in the very inſtant of his well doing. Cheriſhings.

When your Horſe is perfect, in all the Leſſons formerly ſpoke of, and underſtandeth the helps and corrections belonging to the ſame, you ſhall then teach him to turn readily on both hands, by ſtraitning his large Rings, and bringing them into a much leſs compaſs, and although among Horſemen, and in the Art of Horſemanſhip, there are divers and ſundry turns, ſome high and lofty as the turn upon the *Corvet*, *Capriole*, or on bounds, ſome cloſe and near the ground, as the turn *Tarra*, *Tarra*, or thoſe we call *Caragolo*, *Serpeigiare*, and ſuch like; and ſome ſwift and flying, as the *Incavellere*, *Chambetta*, and ſuch like; yet ſith they all labour but to one end, which is to bring an Horſe to an exact ſwiftneſs and readineſs in turning, I will in as brief and plain manner as I can, ſhew you how to compaſs the ſame. Firſt, therefore, you ſhall make out a Ring, ſome three or four yards in com- Of turning.

paſs and in the ſame, with all gentleneſs a while, walk your Horſe, ſuffering him to go the ſame at his own pleaſure, gathering his Head up by little and little, and making him take pleaſure in the ſame, till you find that he taketh knowledge of the Ring, and will with all willingneſs make about the ſame, coveting rather to ſtraiten it, than inlarge it; which perceived, you ſhall then carry your Bridle hand conſtant and ſomewhat ſtrait, yet the outmoſt Rein ever ſomewhat more ſtrait than the inmoſt, making the Horſe rather look from the Ring than into the Ring, and the Calfe of your Leg (as occaſion ſhall ſerve) ſomewhat near to the outward ſide of the Horſe, and then you ſhall trot him about the Ring, firſt on the one ſide, and then on the other, making your changes within that ſtrait Ring, as you did before within the large Ring.

And in this ſort without ceaſing, you ſhall exerciſe your Horſe a full hour together, then ſtop him, make him advance twice or thrice together, then retire in an even Line, and ſo ſtand ſtill a pretty while and cheriſh him; then when he hath taken freſh breath to him again and do as before, continually labouring by raiſing up his Bridle-hand, and thruſting forward your Legs and Body, to bring his trot to all the ſwiftneſs and loftineſs that may be, and your changes to do them ſo readily, and roundly as may be: alſo making him to lap his outmoſt Leg ſo much over his inmoſt Leg, that he may cover it more then a Foot over, and thus you ſhall exerciſe him a whole forenoon at leaſt a week together, only doing his former Leſſons but once over in a morning and no more, and in this practiſe you teach him perfectly three Leſſons together, that is the turn *Terra, Terra*, the *Incavalere*, and the *Chambetta*: the turn *Terra, Terra*, in the outmoſt circle of the ſtrait Ring, and the *Incavalere* and *Chambetta* in the changes, wherein he is forc't to lap one Leg over another, or elſe to lift up the inmoſt Leg from the ground, while he brings the outmoſt over it: and ſurely in this Ring and theſe changes, conſiſteth the main Art of turning, and the cheifeſt glory both of the Horſe and the Horſeman: and therefore it is meet for every Rider to think this Leſſon never perfectly learnt, and therefore continually to practiſe his Horſe in the ſame, making him not onely tread and trot theſe narrow Rings, but alſo gallop them, and from

gallopping

gallopping them to paſs them about in ground-falts, as by taking up his fore-Legs from the ground both together, and bringing his hinder Feet into their place, and ſo paſſing the Ring about once or twice or thrice, at your pleaſure, or as oft as the Horſes ſtrength and courage will allow: and this is the true turn, called *Terra, Terra*, and of greateſt requeſt with Horſemen, and likewiſe with Souldiers; and this *will every Horſe naturally and eaſily be brought unto: only by a continual trotting and gallopping of theſe narrow Rings. Thus you ſee the perfectneſs of your large Rings, brings your Horſe to an eaſie uſe of the ſtrait Rings; and the eaſie knowledge of the ſtrait Rings brings a Horſe to the perfection of turning, which is the ground and maine ſumme of this Art, a ſtopping begets retiring, and retiring advancing. Thus every Leſſon as it were a chain, is linkt one to another.*

The helps belonging to turning, are all whatſoever are formerly ſpoken of becauſe it is a Leſſon, *which beſides that it containeth in it ſelf all other Leſſons, ſo it muſt be done with more courage, Art, and nimbleneſs, then any elſe whatſoever*; and therefore the Horſe had need of all aſſiſtance that can poſſibly be given him. Helps.

The corrections are the Spurs given on the outmoſt ſide, when the Horſe ſticks, and is harder to come about on the one ſide, then on the other, and the Rod ſtriken hard on the outmoſt ſide of the offending Member, as alſo a continual labour, when the Horſe ſhewes either unwillingneſs or diſobedience touching the unnimbleneſs of his turning, when he beats one Leg againſt another, or treads one Foot upon another, the raps and hurts he doth himſelf, are ſufficient corrections; and will both make him know his fault and amend it. Corrections.

For his cheriſhings, they are alſo the former already ſpoken of, *yet to be uſed (if poſſibly) with greater earneſtneſs, in as much as this Leſſon being moſt cunning; would for the performance thereof ever receive the moſt comfort.* Cheriſhings.

Your Horſe being brought to this perfection, that hee will perfectly tread his large Rings, ſtop, retire, advance before, yerk behind, and turn readily on either hand, you ſhall then take away his Muſrole and Trench, and in ſtead thereof put upon his Head a gentle Cavezan or two joynts and three pieces, with a

chap-band underneath, which you ſhall buckle cloſe, but not ſtreight, and be ſure that the cavezan lye upon the tender griſſel of the Horſes Noſe, ſomewhat near to the upper part of his Noſtrils; then to the chap-band you ſhall faſten the Martingale, and laſtly to the rings on each ſide the cavezan, you ſhall faſten long divided reins, more then a yard and a half in length a piece, then into his Mouth you ſhall put a ſweet ſmooth Cannon bit, with a plain watering chain, the cheek being of large ſize, ſo it may arm a little above the point of his Shoulder; and the kirble ſhall be thick, round and large hanging looſely upon his nether Lip, and inticing the Horſe with his Lip to play with the ſame. Thus armed you ſhall take his back, and caſting the left reine of your cavezan over the Horſes right ſhoulder, you ſhall bear it with your thumb, with the reins of the bit in your left hand; and the right reins of the cavezan you ſhall caſt over the Horſes left Shoulder, and beare it with your Rod in your right hand, and ſo trot him forth the firſt morning out right a mile or two in the high-way, making him onely feel and grow acquainted with the bit, and onely making him now and then ſtop and retire, and gathering up his Head in a due place, and faſhioning his rein with all the beauty and comlineſs that may be, which done the next day you ſhall bring him to his large Rings, and as was before ſhewed, there make him perfect with the bit as you did with the ſhaffle: firſt in trotting, then in galloping of the ſame, then make him ſtop, retire, advance, yerk behind, and come upon their hand with a great deal more perfectneſs, and more grace then was formerly done with the trench, which is an eaſie labour, in as much as the bit is as much better command, and brings more comelineſs to the Horſes motions, is alſo a greater help, a ſharper correction, and cheriſher of more comfort then any before uſed. And thus in the firſt moneth you may make any Horſe perfect upon the trene in the Leſſons before ſpoke of, ſo in the ſecond moneth you may make the ſame Leſſons a great deal more perfect upon the bit, and ſo preſume in two moneths to have a perfect ground Horſe, fit either for Souldier or Schollar, that hath any good rules of horſman-ſhip in him.

Of the turning Poſt. Now for as much as the Art in turning in Horſes is of great difficulty, and ought of all Leſſons to be moſt elaborate, I will ſpeak

ſpeak a little further thereof, and ſhew you the practiſe of theſe preſent times, for the beſt accompliſhment of the ſame, without ſtirring up evil motions in the Horſe, whence Reſtiveneſs, and other vile errours do grow; for it is certain that every Horſe naturally deſireth neither offence, nor to offend; but the raſh diſcretions of ignorant horſmen, which will compel a Horſe to do, before he know what, or how to do, is the begetting of thoſe evils which are hardly or ever reclaimed; for a Horſe is like an ill-brought-up Boy, who having learnt drunkenneſs in his youth, will hardly be ſober in his age, and having once got a Knaviſh quality, though he be never ſo much puniſhed for the ſame, will yet now and then ſhew that the remembrance is not utterly extinguiſhed; and for as much as in this Leſſon of ſtrait turns, there is ſo much curious hardneſs that a Horſe is moſt ſubject to rebel, and learn many evils thereby, therefore to prevent all thoſe evils, you ſhall cauſe a ſmooth ſtrong poſt to be well ram'd, and fixed in the earth in the midſt of the ſtrait-ring, at the very point and center thereof, then cauſing a Foot-man to ſtand at the poſt, you ſhall give him the right rein of your Cavezan, which you ſhall make him hold about the poſt, and ſo walk or trot your Horſe about the ſame on your right hand as long as you pleaſe, then taking up the right rein, give him up the left rein, and do as much upon the left hand, and thus change from hand to hand, as oft as you ſhall think convenient, till you have brought your Horſe to the abſolute perfection of every turn, the Poſt being ſuch a guide and bound unto the Horſe, that albeit the Horſman were of himſelf utterly ignorant, yet it is impoſſible the Horſe ſhould either diſorder or diſobey the Riders purpoſe.

Of managing. When your Horſe can thus perfectly for every ſeveral turn either ſtrait, or open with his bit, you ſhall then teach him to manage, which is the only poſture for the uſe of the Sword on Horſeback, and you ſhall do it in this manner: Firſt, cauſe ſome by-ſtander to prick up in the earth two riding Rods, about twenty or forty yards or more, as you think good, diſtant one from the other; then walk your Horſe in a ſtreight turn or Ring about the firſt on your right hand, and ſo paſſing him in an even furrow down to the other Rod, walk about it alſo in a nar-

row

row Ring on your left hand, then thruſt him into a gentle gallop down the even furrow, till you come to the firſt Rod, and there making him (as it were) ſtop, and advance without any pauſe or intermiſſion of time; thruſt him forward again, beat the turn *Terra, Terra,* about on your right hand, then gallop forth right to the other Rod, and in the ſame manner beat the turn about on your left hands; and thus do as oft as you ſhall think it convenient for your own practice and the Horſes ſtrength.

Diverſities of Manages.

Now of theſe manages, our ancient Maſters in Horſemanſhip have made divers kind, as manage with reſt, and manage without reſt, manage with ſingle turns, and manage with double turns, which indeed doth rather breed confuſion, than underſtanding in either the Horſe or Horſeman: Therefore for your better knowledge, I will reduce them only but to two kinds, that is manage open and manage cloſe: your open manage is that which I ſhewed you before, when you turn *Terra, Terra,* which is the moſt open of all ſtrait turns: and your cloſe manage is when you turn upon the *Incavalere* or *Chamletta,* which are the cloſeſt of all turns, and may be done as before I ſhewed in a flying manner, even upon one Foot, which although it be artful, yet it is not ſo glorious and ſafe for the Souldiers practice, only, this you may be moſt aſſured of that when a Horſe can manage upon both theſe turns, he may manage without more inſtruction, upon any other turn whatſoever.

Of the career.

When your Horſe is perfect in the manages before ſaid, you may then paſs a *career* at your pleaſure, which is to run your Horſe forth-right at his full ſpeed, and then making him ſtop quickly, ſuddenly, firm and cloſe on his Buttock: in which Leſſon there needeth little inſtructions, but only ſome few obſervations, as firſt, that you make not your *career* too long, whereby the Horſe may be weakned; or too ſhort, whereby his true wind and courage may be undiſcover'd, but competent and indifferent, as about four or fiveſcore yards at the moſt: then that you ſtart him gently without a fright: and laſtly, that you firſt give him a little warning with your Bridle-hand, and then ſtop him firmly and ſtrongly; which place of ſtop, if it be a little bending downwards, it is a great deal the better. And thus in theſe Leſſons already ſhewed you, conſiſteth all the full perfection

fection of a Horſe for ſervice in the Warres, which any painful man may bring his Horſe well unto, in leſs then three Moneths: how ever our Ancients in former times have been blind, and in the ſame practice have waſted two years, ere they brought it to perfection.

Horſes for pleaſure.

Now foraſmuch as to the Art of riding, belongeth divers other Salts and Leaps, right pleaſant and curious to behold; and though not generally uſed in the Wars, yet not utterly uſeleſs for the ſame; and ſith, they are many times very needful for the health of Mans Body, I will by no means abridge our Engliſh Husband-man of the ſame, but proceed to the Leſſons, which are meet for Horſes of pleaſure, of which the firſt is to make a Horſe bound aloft with all his four Feet from the ground, and you ſhall do it in this manner; When you have trotted your Horſe forth-right a dozen or twenty yards, you ſhall ſtop him, and when he hath advanced once or twice, you ſhall a little ſtraiten your Bridle-hand, and then give him the even ſtroke of both your Spurs together hard, which at firſt will but only quicken and amaze him, but doing it again and again, it will breed other thoughts in him, and he being of Spirit and Mettal, (as it is loſt labour to offer to teach a Jade ſuch motions) he will preſently gather up his Body, and either riſe little or much from the ground, then preſently cheriſh him, and after ſome reſt, offer him the like again, and thus do till you have made him bound twice or thrice, then make much of him, and do no more for that day; the next day renew his Leſſon again, and double his exerciſe increaſing ſo day by day, till he come to that perfectneſs, that he will bound whenſoever your Spurs ſhall command him.

Of bounding aloft.

Of the Corvet.

When your Horſe can bound perfectly, then you ſhall teach him the Corvet in this manner: You ſhall at the corner where two Walls joyn together, a little hollow the ground a Horſes length or more, and then place a ſmooth ſtrong Poſt by the ſide of the hollowneſs of a Horſes length likewiſe from the Wall; then over againſt the Poſt, faſten an Iron Ring in the Wall; this done, Ride your Horſe into the hollow place, and faſten one of the Reins of the Cavezan unto the Ring, and the other about the Poſt, then after you have cheriſhed your Horſe, make him advance

advance, by the help of your Calves of your Legs onely twice or thrice together; then let him ſtand ſtill and cheriſh him, then make him to advance again at leaſt a dozen times together, then reſt, and after advance twenty or forty times together, dayly increaſing his advancings as he grows perfect therein, till you perceive that he hath got ſuch a habit therein that he will by no means preſs forward, but keeping his ground certain, advance both before and behinde of an equal height, and keep one juſt and certain time with the motions of your Legs, neither doing ſlower nor faſter, but all after one manner and leaſure: but if you find that he doth not raiſe his hinder parts high enough, then you ſhall cauſe a Footman to ſtand by you, and as you make him advance before, ſo the Footman by jerking him gently upon his hinder fillets with his Rod to raiſe up his hinder parts alſo; this will bring your Horſe in few dayes to a perfect and brave Corvet, ſo that after you may do it in any place where you pleaſe without the help either of Wall or Poſt, or other by-ſtander.

Of the gallop Galliard.

When your Horſe is made perfect in the Corvett, and that he will do it readily and comely, you ſhall at the end of every third or fourth advancing, give him the ſtroak of your Spurs, and make him bound aloft; then put him to his Corvet again as before, and then make him bound again; and thus at the end of every third advancing, ſee you make him bound for the length of a tilt bar, or an ordinary managing furrow, according to the Horſes ſtrength, and this is called the *gallop galliard*, which if it be taught a Horſe along by the ſide of ſome Wall or ſmooth Pale, it is ſo much the better, and a great deal fewer diſorders will riſe and trouble the Rider.

Of the Capriole.

The next Leſſon you ſhall teach your Horſe after the gallop galliard is the *Capriole* or Goats leap, which is the ſame manner of motion which the Corvet is, onely it is to be done forward, and much ground gained in the Salt, and the Horſe is to raiſe his hinder parts as high, or rather higher then his fore-parts, and to keep rather a ſwifter then ſlower time in doing of it; therefore when you teach your Horſe to do it, you ſhall bring him into ſome hollow furrow, where the ground is a little deſcending, and turning his Head to the deſcent, put him into the Corvet temperate and gently, then when you give him the Calves of your Legs;

legs to raise up his fore parts, in the same instant jerk your leg violently forward again, that he may not stick, but carry his hinder-legs after his fore-legs, and let some skilful foot-man standing by your side, jerk the horse over the fillets with his rod, and make him raise up his hinder parts; and thus do without ceasing, till he perform your will nimbly and cunningly, and then forget not to cherish him, and give him all comfort possible. And this lesson and the other which consist of violent and quick saults or leaps, would ever be practised the first in the morning whilest a Horse is fresh and lusty, for to put him to them after his fire-edge is taken away, will but bring him to a loathing of his instruction, or at best to do them but slovenly, heavily, and unwillingly.

There is also another motion which is pleasing to the eye, though it be very labourſome to the body, which is to make a Horse go side-long of which hand soever the Rider is disposed, and is very necessary in the wars, because it is the avoiding of any blow coming from the Enemy. This motion when you intend to teach your Horse, you shall draw up your bridle hand somewhat strait, and if you determine to have him go aside to your right hand, lay your left Rein close to his neck, and the calve of your left leg close to his side, and as you did in the *Incavalere*, making him lap or put his left leg over his right, then turning your Rod backward, and jerking him gently on the left hinder thigh, make him bring his hinder parts to the Right side also, and stand in an even line as at the first, then make him remove his fore-parts more than before, so that he may stand, as it were, cross over the even line, and then make him bring his hinder parts after, and stand in an even line again; and thus do, till by long practise he will move his fore parts and hinder parts both together, and go side-long as farre as you please, then cherish him, and if you will have him go towards your left hand, do as you did before, using all your helps and corrections on the right side only. And thus much I think is sufficient to have spoke touching all the several Lessons meet to be taught to any Horse whatsoever, whether he be for service or for pleasure, and which being performed artificially, carefully, and with patience, you may presume your Horse is compleat and per- Of going aside.

perfect, the rather ſith no man can find out any invention, or teach any other motion to a Horſe, which may be good and comly, but you ſhall eaſily perceive, that they are received from ſome one of theſe already rehearſed.

Riding before a Prince.

Now if you ſhall be called to Ride before a Prince, you muſt not obſerve the liberty of your own will; but the ſtate of the perſon before whom you Ride, and the grace of the horſe which you ride; and therefore being come into the riding place, you ſhal chuſe your ground, ſo that the Perſon before whom you are to ride may ſtand in the midſt thereof, ſo as he may well behold both the paſſage of the Horſe to him and from him: then being ſeated in a comely order, and every ornament about you handſome and decent, you ſhall put your Horſe gently forth into a comely trot, and being come againſt the Perſon of ſtate, bow your body down to the creſt of your Horſe, then raiſing your ſelf again, paſs half a ſcore yards beyond him, and then making out a *narrow Ring*, thruſt your Horſe into a gentle gallop, and give him two or three managing turns, in as ſhort ground as may be, to ſhew his nimbleneſs and readineſſe: then upon the laſt turn, his face being toward the great perſon, ſtop him comely and cloſe, and make him to advance twice or thrice; then having taken breath, put him into a *gallop galliard*, and ſo paſs along the length of the even *furrow* with that ſalt, making him to do it alſo round about the *Ring*; then his face being towards the Prince, ſtop him and give him freſh breath, then thruſt him into the *Capriole*, now and then making him yerk out behinde, yet ſo as it may be perceived it is your will, and not the Horſes malice; and having gone about the Ring with that ſalt, and his face brought to look upon the *Prince*, ſtop him again and give him breath: then drawing nearer to the Prince, you ſhall beat the turn *Terra Terra*, firſt in a pretty large compaſs, then by ſmall degrees ſtraitning it a little and a little, draw it to the very center where you may give two or three cloſe flying turns, and then changing your hands undoe all that you did before, till you come to the Rings firſt largeneſs, then the Horſes face being direct upon the *Prince* ſtop him, and put him into a corvet, and in that motion hold him a pretty ſpace, making him to do it firſt in an even line, firſt to the right hand, then to the left, now backward.

Of the Caragolo.

ward, then forward again: and thus having performed every motion orderly and comely, bow down your body to the Prince, and ſo depart.

But if you intend to Ride only for Recreation, then you ſhall mark what Leſſon your Horſe is moſt imperfect in, and with that leſſon you ſhall ever when you ride both begin and end; after it you ſhal fall to thoſe leſſons which are to your ſelf moſt difficult, and by the practiſe of them bring your ſelf to a perfectneſs, then conſequently to all other leſſons, repeating (as it were) every one over more or leſs, leſt want of uſe breed forgetfulneſs, and forgetfulneſs utter ignorance; but if your Recreation in Riding be tyed to any ſpecial rules of health, and that your practiſe therein proceed more from the Commandment of your Phyſitian than your pleaſure, then I would wiſh you in the morning firſt to begin with a ſtirring, or rough Leſſon, as the *gallop galliard*, *bounding*, or ſuch like, which having a little ſtirred your blood, and made it warm, you ſhall then calm it again with a gentle manage, or the galloping of large Rings; then to ſtir your ſpirits again, to bring the ſtone down, or procure appetite, paſs into the *capriole* or *corvet*; and then to make quiet thoſe moved parts, ſet the turn called, *Terra, Terra*, the *Incavalere*, and ſuch like. And thus one while ſtirring your blood, and another while moderately allaying ſuch ſtirring, you ſhall give your body that due and proper exerciſe which is moſt fit for health and long life. Many other waies this Recreation may be uſed for the good of a mans body, which becauſe particular infirmities muſt give particular rules how and when to uſe it, I will at this time ſpeak no further thereof, but refer the exerciſe to their own pleaſures which ſhall practice the ſame, and to the good they ſhall finde in the practice. To ride for recreation.

CHAP. III.

Of the breeding of all ſorts of Horſes fit for the Husbandmans uſe.

THe mindes of men being ſwayed with many various motions, take delight ſometimes to be recreated rather with contemplative delights, then with active pleaſures, and there is

ſtrong reaſon therefore, becauſe diſability of body, or affairs of the Kingdome or common-wealth, may take a man from thoſe pre-occupations, which otherwiſe might ſtir him to more laborious exerciſe; and of theſe contemplative Recreations. I can prefer none before that Gentlemanly and beneficial delight of breeding creatures meet for the uſe of man, and the good of the Common-wealth, wherein he liveth: and of theſe breedings I cannot eſteem any ſo excellent, as the breeding of Horſes, both for the pleaſure we gain thereby in our own particular ſervice, and alſo for our ſtrength, defence, and tillage of the Kingdome.

The breeding of Horſes.

He therefore that ſuteth his recreation to the breeding of horſes muſt firſt have reſpect unto the ground whereon he liveth or injoyeth; for every ground is not meet to breed on, but ſome too good, ſome too bad: ſome too good, becauſe they may be exhauſted to a more beneficial commodity, Horſes having a world of caſualties attending on them, and many years before the true profit doth ariſe: and ſome too bad, becauſe the extream barrenneſs of the ſame will deny competent nouriſhment to the thing bred, and ſo to the loſs of time and profit adde mortality.

Grounds to breed on.

The grounds then meet to breed horſes on, would neither be extream fruitful, nor extream barren, but of an indifferent mixture, yield rather a ſhort ſweet burthen, then a long, rich and fruitful, it would rather lye high than low, but howſoever firm and hard under the foot; it would be full of Mole-hills, uneven treadings, hills, and much craggineſs, to bring Colts to nimbleneſs of foot, it would have good ſtore of freſh waters, an open ſharp ayr, and ſome convenient covert; and this ground is beſt, if it be ſeveral and incloſed, yet may be bred upon, though it be open, and in common, only ſome more carefulneſs to be looked for, a little before, and in the time of Foaling. Nay, the grounds which are neither ſeveral nor common, are very good alſo to breed on, and thoſe be your teathering grounds, which we call particular grounds; for though they be proper commonly to one man, yet they are not divided nor eaten otherwiſe than at the owners pleaſure: And theſe teathering grounds are as good as any grounds for the firſt nouriſhing of a Foal, if they be

be amongst Corn-grounds or any grain except peaſe only.

If you have much ground to breed on, you ſhall divide it into many paſtures, the leaſt and barrenneſt for your Stallion to run with your Mares in, thoſe which have leaſt danger of waters are for your Mares to foal in, the fruitfulleſt and of beſt growth, for your Mares to give milk in; and the moſt ſpacious and unevenеſt to bring up your Colts in, after they are weaned. Diviſion of grounds.

For the choice of a good Stallion, and which is beſt for our Kingdome, opinion ſwayeth ſo far, that a man can hardly give well received Directions: yet ſurely if men will be ruled by the truth of experience, the beſt Stallion to beget horſes for the Wars is the *Courſer*, the *Jennet*, or the *Turks*; the beſt for courſing and running is the *Barbary*; the beſt for hunting is the *Baſtard courſer* begot of the *Engliſh*; the beſt for the Coach is the *Flemiſh*, the beſt for travel or burthen is the *Engliſh*, and the beſt for eaſe is the *Iriſh hobby*. Choice of Stallions and which are beſt.

For the choice of *Mares*, you ſhall greatly reſpect their ſhapes and mettals, eſpecially that they be beautifully fore handed for they give much goodneſs to their Foals: and for their kindes, any of the *Races* before ſpoken of is very good, or any of them mixt with our true Engliſh *Races*, as *Baſtard-courſer*, *Mare*, *Baſtard-Jennet*, *Baſtard-Turk*, *Barbary*, *&c.* Choice of Mares.

The beſt time to put your Stallion and Mares together is in the middle of *March*, if you have any graſs, as you ſhould have great care for that purpoſe, and one foal falling in *March*, is worth two falling in *May*, becauſe he poſſeſſeth, as it were, two winters in a year, and is thereby ſo hardened, that nothing can (almoſt) after impaire him, and the beſt time to take your horſe from the Mares again, is at the end of *April*, or middle of *May*, in which you ſhall note, that from the middle of *March*, till the midſt of *May*, you may at any time put your Stallions to your Mares, and a months continuance is ever ſufficient: provided ever, as near as you can, that you put them together in the increaſe of the Moon; for Foals got in the wane are not accounted ſtrong or healthful. When to put them together.

For covering of Mares, it is to be done two waies, out of hand, or in hand; out of hand, as when the Horſe and Mares run together abroad, as is before ſaid; or turned looſe into ſome Of covering Mares.

empty

empty barn for three nights one after another, which is the ſureſt and the ſafeſt way for a Mares holding; or in hand, early in a morning, and late at an evening two or three daies together, when you bring the Horſe to the Mare, and make him cover her once or twice at a time holding him faſt in your hand, and when the act is done, lead him back to the ſtable; and in this act you ſhall ever obſerve, as ſoon as the Horſe cometh from her back, preſently to caſt a pail of cold water on her hinder parts, or elſe to chaſe her ſwiftly, up and down, for fear, by ſtanding ſtill ſhe caſt out the ſeed, which is very ordinary.

To know if a Mare hold.

To know whether your Mare hold to the Horſe or no, there be divers waies, of which the beſt is by offering her the Horſe again at the next increaſe of the Moon, which if ſhe willingly receive, it is a ſign ſhe held not before; but if ſhe refuſe, then it is moſt certain ſhe is ſped, or if you powre a ſpoonful of cold vinegar into her ear, if ſhe ſhake only her head, it is a ſign ſhe holds; but if ſhe ſhake head, body and all, then truly it is a ſign that ſhe doth not hold: Laſtly, if after ſhe is covered, you ſee her ſcour, her coat grow ſmooth and ſhining, and that ſhe doth (as it were) renew and increaſe in liking, it is a ſign ſhe holds; but if ſhe hold at a ſtay without any amendment, then offer the Horſe again for ſhe is not ſerved.

To conceive Male foals.

To make your Mares conceive moſt male Foals, you ſhal be ſure to keep your Stallion proud, and your Mare poor, that his luſt maſtering hers, he may only be predominant and chief in the action: many other rules fancy deviſeth, but they erre in their ends, and I would by no means have this diſcourſe capable of any uncertainty.

To provoke luſt.

If you have any advantage given you by friendſhip, or otherwiſe whereby you may have a Mare at the preſent very well covered, only yours is not yet ready for the horſe, you ſhall in this caſe to provoke luſt in her, give her to drink good ſtore of clarified hony, and new milk mixt together, and then with a buſh of nettles all to nettle her privy parts, and then immediately offer her to the Horſe.

To keep Mares from barrenneſs.

To keep your Mares from barrenneſs, and to make them ever apt to conceive foals, you ſhall by no means feed too extream fat, but keep them in a middle ſtate of body by moderate labour,

bour, for the leaner they are when then they come to take Horſe, the much better they will conceive.

After your Mares have been covered, and that you perceive in them the marks of conceiving, you ſhall let them reſt three weeks or a month, that the ſubſtance may knit; then after, moderately labour or travel them, till you ſee them ſpring, and then turn them abroad, and let them run till they foal; for to houſe them after is dangerous and unwholſome. Ordering of Mares after covering.

If your Mare be hard of foaling, or will not cleanſe after ſhe hath foaled, you ſhall take a pint of running water, wherein good ſtore of fennel hath been boyled, and as much ſtrong, old, ſweet wine, with a fourth part of the beſt Sallet oyl, and having mixt them well together, being but luke warm, pour it into her noſtrils, and then hold and ſtop them cloſe, that ſhe may ſtrain her whole body, and it will preſently give her eaſe. A help for Mares after foaling.

As ſoon as your Mare hath foal'd, you ſhall remove her into the beſt graſs you have, which is freſh and unfoiled, to make her milk ſpring; and if it be early in the year, you ſhall have a care that there be good ſhelter in the ſame, and there let her nouriſh her foal moſt part of the ſummer following. Ordering of Mares after foaling.

As touching the weaning of foals, though ſome uſe to wean them at *Michaelmas*, or *Martlemas* following; out of a ſuppoſition that the winter milk is not good or wholſome, yet they are much deceived; and if you can by any convenient means, (ſaving greater loſſes) let your foals run with their Dams the whole year, even till they foal again, for it will keep the foal better in health, in more luſt, and leaſt ſubject to tenderneſs. Weaning of Foals.

When you intend to wean your foals, you ſhall take them from their Dams over-night, and drive them into ſome empty houſe, where they may reſt; and the Mares be free from their noiſes, then on the morning following give to every foal faſting a branch or two of *Saven* annointed or rold in butter, and then having faſted two hours after, give him a little meat, as graſs, hay, or garbadge of Corn, with ſome clear water, and do this three daies together; then ſeeing that they have forgotten their Dams, geld ſuch Colt foals, as you intend to make geldings of and after their ſwellings are paſt, put them unto your other Colt-foals Ordering after the weaning.

foals into a paſture provided for them by themſelves, and your Filly-foals into another by themſelves: which Paſtures may either be high Woods, Commons, or ſuch like ſpacious peeces of ground, where they may run till they be ready for the Saddle.

Gelding of Colts.

Now, albeit I proportion unto you this manner of gelding of Foals, yet I would have you know that the beſt and ſafeſt way to geld them is, if it may be under the Dam when they ſuck, as at nine, or at fifteen daies of age, if the ſtones appear, or elſe ſo ſoon as you can by any means perceive them fall down into the Cod, for then there will be no danger of ſwelling, or other miſchiefs, which commonly attend the action. And thus much touching the breeding of Horſes, and the obſervations due to the ſame through all the courſes and paſſages thereof, as hath been found by ancient practiſe and experience, as appears in my *Maſter-piece.*

CHAP. IV.

Of Horſes for travel, and how to make them amble.

THE Husbandman, whoſe occupation in the general affairs of the Conmon-wealth, as ſome to the market, ſome to the City, and ſome to the ſeats of Juſtice, muſt neceſſarily be imployed almoſt in continual travel; and therefore it is meet that he be provided ever of a good and eaſie travelling horſe.

The marks of a good travelling Horſe.

The marks whereby he ſhall chuſe a good travelling horſe, are theſe; he ſhal be of a good colour and ſhape, lean headed & round foreheaded, a full eye, open noſtril, wide jawed, looſe thropled, deep neckt, thin creſted, broad breaſt, flat chinn'd, out ribb'd, clean limb'd, ſhort joynted, ſtrong hoofed, well mettal'd, neither fiery nor craving, ſtrong in every member, and eaſie to mount and get up upon; he ſhall follow with haling, and ſtand ſtill when he is reſtrained.

To make a Horſe amble.

Now forasmuch as there are a world of good horſes which are not eaſie, and a world of eaſie horſes which are not good, you ſhall by theſe directions following, make any horſe amble whatſoever: firſt, then you ſhall underſtand that practice hath made divers men believe that divers waies they can make a horſe amble,

amble as by gagging them in the mouths, by toyling them in deep earth, by the help of ſhooes, by gallopping and tyring, or ſuch like, all which are ill and imperfect; yet the truth is, there is but one certain and true way to compaſs it, and that is to make a ſtrong garth web, flat and well quilted with cotten, four paſterns for the ſmalls of his fore-legs, under his knees, and for the ſmalls of his hinder leggs ſomewhat below the ſpavin joynts: to theſe paſterns you ſhall fix ſtrong ſtraps of leather, with good iron buckles to make ſhorter or longer at pleaſure, and having placed them about his fore-legs, you ſhall take two ſeveral round ropes of an eaſie twiſt, made with ſtrong loops at either end, and not above eight handfuls in length, and theſe the horſe ſtanding to a true proportion, you ſhall faſten to the four ſtraps of leather, to wit, one of them to his near fore-leg, and his near hinder-legg, and the other to his far fore-leg, and his far hinder leg, which is called amongſt Horſemen trammelling; with theſe you ſhall let him walk in ſome incloſed piece of ground, till he can ſo perfectly go in the ſame, that when at any time you offer to chaſe him, you may ſee him amble ſwiftly and truly; then you ſhall take his back, and ride him with the ſame trammels, at leaſt three or four times a day till you find that he is ſo perfect, that no way can be ſo rough and uneven, as to compell him to alter his ſtroke or go un-nimbly. This done, you may firſt take away one trammel, then after the other, and onely wreath about under his fore-feet locks thick and heavy, great royls of Hay or Straw Ropes; and ſo ride him with the ſame a good ſpace after; for it will make him amble eaſie, then cut them away, and ride and exerciſe him without any thing but the ordinary help of the bridles, and there is no doubt but he will keep his pace to your full contentment and pleaſure.

Divers wayes of ambling.

Of trammelling.

Of whiſping.

Now during this time of your teaching, if your horſe ſtrike not a large ſtroak, and over-reach enough, then you ſhall make the trammel the ſtraiter; but if he over-reach too much, then you ſhall give it more liberty: and herein you ſhall find, that an inch ſtraitning, or an inch inlarging, will adde or abate at leaſt half a foot, an whole foot and direct ſtroak. And thus much touching the teaching of any horſe to amble, of what nature or quality ſoever he be, or how unapt or untoward ſoever to learn.

CHAP. V.

Of the ordering and dieting of the Hunting-Horſe.

SOme love hunting for the exerciſe of their own bodies, ſome for the chaſe they hunt, ſome for the running of the Hounds, and ſome for the training of their Horſes, whereby they may find the excellency of their goodneſs and indurance: To him therefore which placeth his delight in the goodneſs of his horſe, I would wiſh him to order and diet him, and he ſhall moſt aſſuredly come to the true knowledg of the beſt worth which is within him; And if in theſe Rules which I now ſhew, I be leſs curious than formerly I have been, let no man wonder thereat, but know that time (which is the mother of experience) doth in our labours ſhew us more new and more nearer wayes to our ends, then at the firſt we conceived: And though when I firſt practiſed this Art, I knew not how to bring a very fat horſe from *Michaelmas* till *Chriſtmas*, to ſhew his utmoſt perfection, I know now in two moneths (though never ſo foul) how to make him for any wager, daring now boldly to adventure on that, at which before I thought almoſt preſent death to offer; thus doth obſervation and labour find out the darkeſt ſecrets in Art.

Taking up of the Hunting Horſe.

To begin then with the firſt ordering of a Hunting Horſe, you ſhall know, that the beſt time to take him from graſs is about *Bartholmew-tide*, the day being fair, dry and pleaſant, and as ſoon as he is taken up, to let him ſtand all that night in any vaſt houſe to empty his body, the next day ſtable him, and give him Wheat ſtraw, if you pleaſe, but no longer in any wiſe; for though the old rule is to take up horſes bellies with ſtraw, yet it ſtraitneth the Guts, heats the Liver, and hurteth the Wind: therefore let only moderate exerciſe, as riding him forth to water morning and evening, and other ayrings do what you expect ſtraw ſhould; and for his food let it be hay that is ſweet though rough, and either old, or at leaſt well ſweat in the Mow.

Cloathing the Horſe.

After his belly is emptied, you ſhall cloath him firſt with a ſingle cloath, whilſt the heat endureth, and after with more, as you ſhall ſee occaſion require, and when you begin to cloath the horſe, then ſhall you dreſs, curry and rub him alſo. Now for as much as it is a rule with ignorant Horſemen, that if they have

but

but the name of keeping a Hunting horse, they will with all care (without any reason) lay many cloaths upon him, as if it were a speciall Physick, you shall know they are much deceived therein, and may sooner do hurt than good with multiplicity of cloaths; therefore to cloath a horse right, cloath according to the Weather, and the temper of his body; and thus if you see your horse be sleight, smooth and well coloured, then cloath him temperately, as with a single cloath of canvase or sack-cloath at the most; and if then as the year grows colder, you find his hair rise or stare about his neck, flanks, or outward parts, then you shall adde a woollen cloath, or more if need require, till his hair fall smooth again, holding it for your rule, That a rough coat shews want of cloath, and a smooth coat cloathing enough; yet if your horse have been clean fed, taken exercise sufficient, and hath not much glut within him, if then you find that in the night he sweateth in his cloaths, then it is a sign he is over-fed; but if he be foul inwardly, or hath no sweat formerly, and now sweats coming to good feeding, then you shall augment rather than diminish any cloathing for his foulness, but then breaketh out, and being evacuated, he will come to dryness of body again, and so continue all the year after; and surely for an ordinary proportion of cloaths, I hold a canvase cloath, and a cloath of House-wives Woollen to be at full sufficient for a Hunting Horse.

Of Dressing the Hunting Horse.

A Hunting Horse would be dreſt in his dayes of rest, twice a day, that is, before he go to his morning watering, and before he go to his evening watering; For the manner of his dressing after he is uncloathed, you shall first curry him from the tips of the ear, to the setling on of his tayl, all his whole body most entirely over with an iron comb, his leggs under the knees and cambrels only excepted; then you shall dust him, then curry him again allover with a round brush of Bristles, then dust him the second time, then rub all the loose hairs away with your hands wet in clean water, and so rub till the horse be as dry as at the first, then rub all his body and limbs over with an hair-cloath: Lastly, rub him over with a fine white linnen rubber, then pick his eyes, nostrils, sheath, cods, tuell, and feet very clean, and so cloath him, and stop him round with wisps, if you water within the

houſe; otherwiſe ſaddle him after his body is wrapt about in a Woollen cloath, and ſo ride him forth to the Water.

Of watering the hunting Horſe.

The beſt water for a hunting horſe, is either a running River, or a clear Spring, remote from the Stable a mile, or a mile and a half at moſt, and near unto ſome plain piece of ground, where you may ſcope and gallop after he hath drunk; and as ſoon as you bring your horſe to the water, let him take his full draught without trouble or interruption: then gallop and ſcope him up and down a little, and ſo bring him to the water again, and let him drink what he pleaſe, and then gallop him again: And thus do, till you find he will drink no more; then having ſcop't him a little, walk him with all gentleneſs home, and there cloath him up, ſtop him round with great ſoft wiſps, and ſo let him ſtand an hour upon his bridle, and then feed him.

Of feeding the hunting Horſe.

To ſpeak firſt for the food for hunting horſes, the moſt ordinary is good ſweet ſound Oats, either throughly dryed with age, or elſe on the Kiln, or in the Sun, and if your horſe be either low of fleſh, or not of perfect ſtomach, if to two parts of thoſe Oats you add a third part of clean old Beans, it ſhall be very good and wholſome, and if your horſe be in dyet for a match, and have loſt his ſtomach if then you cauſe theſe Beans to be ſpelted upon a Miln, and ſo mixt with Oats; it will recover him. The next food, which is ſomewhat ſtronger and better, is bread thus made, take two buſhels of good clean Beans and one buſhel of Wheat, and grind them together; then through a fine Range, boult out the quantity of two pecks of pure meal, and bake it in two or three loaves by it ſelf, and the reſt ſift through a meal ſieve; and knead it with water and good ſtore of barm, and ſo bake it in great loaves, and with the courſer bread feed your horſe in his reſt, and with the finer againſt the dayes of ſore labours. Now for the hours of his feeding it ſhall be in the morning, after his coming from water, an hour after high noon, after his comming from his evening water, and at nine or ten of the clock at night upon the dayes of his reſt; but upon the dayes of his exerciſe, two hours after he is throughly cold inwardly and outwardly, and then after according as before mentioned. Laſtly, for the proportion of food, *you ſhall keep no certain quantity, but according*

cording to the horses stomach, that is to say, *you shall feed him by a little at once, so long as he eats with a good appetite; but when he begins to trifle or fumble with his meat, then to give him no more.* Now for his Hay, you shall see that it be dry, short, uplandish hay; and so it be sweet, respect not how coarse or rough it is, sith it is more to scour his teeth, and cool his stomach, then for nourishment expected from it.

Touching the Horses exercise, *which is only in the following of the hounds*, you shall be sure to train him after those which are most swift and speedy; for so you shall know the truth, and not be deceived in your opinion. Touching the dayes, *it shall be twice a week at least, but most commonly thrice*; as for the quantity of his exercise, it must be according to his foulness or cleanness: for if he be very foul, *you must then exercise moderately to break his grease*: if half foul half clean, *then somewhat more to melt his grease*: and if altogether clean, then you may take what you please of him (provided, that you do nothing to discourage his spirits, to abate his mettle, or to lame his limbs) and after every dayes exercise, be assured either to give him the same night, or the next day following, something by way of scouring; or otherwise to take away the grease formerly melted, by means whereof you shall be ever sure to keep your horse in all good health and perfection. The exercise of the Horse.

The best and most excellentest way to scour or purge your horse from all grease, glut, or filthiness within his body, which is a secret hitherto was never either sufficiently taught, or perfectly learned, is to take of Annifeeds three ounces, of Cumminseeds six drams, of Carthamus a dram and a half, of Fenugreek-seed one ounce two drams, of Brimstone one ounce and a half, beat all these to a fine powder, and searse them; then take of Sallet-oyl a pint and two ounces, of honey a pound and a half, and of white Wine four pints, then with as much fine white meal as will suffice, make all into a strong stiffe paste, and knead and work it well: this paste keep in a clean cloath, for it will last long, and after your horse hath been hunted, and is at night, or in the morning exceeding thirsty, take a ball thereof as big as a mans fist, and wash and dissolve it in a gallon or two of cold water, and it will make the water look white like milk; then offer The scouring of the horse.

it

it the horſe to drink in the dark, leſt the colour diſpleaſe him: if he drink it, then feed him; but if he refuſe to drink it, yet care not, but let him faſt without drink till he take it, which aſſuredly he will do in twice or thrice offering; and after once he hath taken it, be then aſſured he will forſake any other drink for it, of this drink, your horſe can never take too much nor too oft; if he have exerciſe: or otherwiſe it feeds too ſore. For all inward infirmities whatſoever it is a preſent remedy: therefore I would not wiſh any horſemen of vertue at any time to be without it; and being once made, it will laſt three or four moneths at leaſt.

Ordering of a Horſe after exerciſe.

After your Horſe hath been exerciſed with Hunting, running train-ſets, or otherwiſe: you ſhall ever cool him well in the field before you bring him home: but being come to the ſtable you ſhall neither waſh nor walk, but inſtantly houſe him, give him ſtore of freſh litter and rub him therewith, and with dry cloaths, till there be not a wet hair about him, then cloath him with his ordinary cloaths, and wiſp him round: then caſt another ſpare cloath over him, which you may abate at your pleaſure, and ſo let him ſtand till it be time to feed him. And thus you may keep any hunting horſe either for match or otherwiſe, in as good ſtate and ſtrength as any Horſeman in this Nation, though he exceed you far both in Reputation and Experience.

CHAP. VI.

Of the ordering and dieting of the Running Horſe.

IF any Husbandman have his mind taken up onely with the delight of Running Horſes; which is a noble ſport, and though not of ſo long indurance, yet equal with any before ſpoken of, he ſhall for the bettering of his knowledg give to his memory theſe few Rules following, by which he ſhall rightly order and diet him.

Of his taking up.

Firſt, for his taking up from graſs (for there for order ſake we muſt firſt begin) it ſhall be at the ſame time of the year, and after the ſame manner that you took up your hunting horſe, and till you have enſeamed him, hardned his fleſh, taken away his inward greaſe, and brought him to a good perfectneſs of wind, you ſhall cloath him, dreſs him, water him, feed him, exerciſe him,

him, purge him and order him after labour, in all points and in all things as you did your hunting horse.

When he is thus clean of body and wind, you shall then lay on some more cloaths, then you did on your hunting horse, to purge his body a litle the more, and to make him the more apt to sweat, and evacuate humors as they shall grow: the ordinary quantity whereof, would be a warm narrow woollen cloath about his body on either side his heart, then a fair white sheet, a woollen cloath about it, and a canvase cloath or two above it, and before his breast a Woollen cloath at least two double: he would continually stand upon clean litter, and have his stable very dark, and perfumed with Juniper, when as the strength of his dung shall annoy it. Of cloathing him.

For his dressing it shall be in all points done as you did to your hunting horse, onely to dress him once a day is sufficient, and that ever in the afternoon: but for rubbing his limbs or body with dry cloaths or wisps, you shall do as often as you come into the Stable, provided that you turn but his cloaths up, but not take them from his body. Of dressing him.

You shall water your running horse as you watered your hunting horse, and give him the same exercise after it, only you shall not bring him into the stable of at least an hour and more after he is watered. Of watering him.

The best food for your running horse, is either good sweet Oats well dryed, sunned and beaten, or bread made of two parts wheat, and but one part beans, and boulted and sifted, and knodden, as was before shewed; onely if you adde to your better sort of bread the whites of twenty or thirty Eggs, and with the barm, a little Ale also, it will be much the better; for you shall not respect how little water you use at all: the hours you feed in, and the quantity of the food shall be the same, and in the same manner as was mentioned before, for the hunting horse, yet with these observations, that if your horse be very lean, sickly, and have a weakly stomach, that then you may as before shewed, give him with his Oats a few spelted beans, or else wash his Oats in strong Ale or Beer, or in the whites of a couple of eggs. Of feeding him.

Touching his exercise, it consisteth in two kinds, the one ayring, the other coursing; ayring is a moderate and gentle exercise by ayring. Of his exercise

which

which you ſhall uſe morning and evening, by riding or leading your horſe a foot pace (but riding is better and leſs in danger of cold) in the morning after his water up to the Hills, and in the evening after his water by the River-ſide, by the ſpace of an hour or two together; and before you lead him forth to ayre, you ſhall be ſure to give him a rere Egg broken into his mouth as ſoon as his bridle is put on, for it will encreaſe wind: and this ayring you ſhall by no means forbear, but upon his dayes of purging or ſweating, or when it much raineth, for then to ayr is unwholſome. Again, if your horſe be very fat, you ſhall ayr before Sun riſe, and after Sun-ſet: but if he be lean, then you ſhall let him have all the ſtrength and comfort of the Sun you can deviſe; and during this ayring, you ſhall be ſure that your horſe be cloathed very warm, eſpecially before the breaſt, and on each ſide the heart, for cold to a running horſe is mortal.

Exerciſe by courſing.

You ſhall courſe your horſe according to his ſtrength and ability of body, that is to ſay, twice a week, thrice, or as oft as you ſee cauſe, and you ſhall courſe him ſometimes in his cloaths to to make him ſweat, and conſume his greaſe, and that muſt be done moderately and gently: and ſometime without his cloath, to increaſe wind; and that ſhall be done ſharply and ſwiftly: you ſhall by keeping your horſe faſting the night before, be ſure that his body be empty before he do courſe, to waſh his tongue and noſtrils with vinegar, or to piſs in his mouth ere you take his back, is very wholſome: you ſhall lead him in your hand well and warm cloathed to the courſe, and there uncloath him and rub his limbs well: then having courſt him, after a little breath taking, cloath him again and ſo ride him home, there rub him throughly, and let him ſtand till he be fully cold; which perceived, let his firſt meat you give him be a handful or two of the ears of Pollard Wheat: then after, his ordinary food as aforeſaid.

Of ſweats.

There is alſo another exerciſe for your running horſe, which is ſweats in his cloaths, either abroad or in the houſe, for Sweats in his cloaths abroad, they are thoſe which are taken upon the courſe, and are formerly ſpoke of, that they muſt be given by a moderate gallopping, no man running, and as ſoon as your horſe hath paſt over his courſe, and is in a high ſweat, you ſhall inſtantly

instantly have him home and there lay more cloaths upon him, and keep him stirring till he have sweat so in the Stable an hour or more, then abate his cloaths by little and little, till he be perfectly cooled and dryed; which you must further by rubbing him continually with dry cloaths, and by laying dry cloaths on, and taking the wet away: but for Sweats in his cloaths, without any exercise abroad, you shall give them either when the weather is so much unseasonable, that you cannot go forth, or when your horse is so much in danger of lameness, that you dare not strain him; and you shall do it thus: First take a blanket folded and warmed very hot and wrap it about his body, then over it lay two or three more, and wisp them round, then over them as many cover-lids, and pin them fast and close; then make the horse stir up and down the Stable till he begin to sweat, then lay on more cloaths, and as the sweat trickleth down his face, so rub it away with dry cloaths till he have sweat sufficiently; then (as before is shewed) abate the cloaths by little and little, and rub him in every part, till he be as dry as at first.

After every course or sweat, you shall scour or purge your horse in the same manner, and with the same medicine that you did your Hunting-horse; for it is the best that can by art be invented, being both a Purge and a Restorative, cleansing and comforting all the parts of a Horses body: but if you think it purgeth not enough, then you shall take twenty Raisins of the Sun, the stones pickt out, and ten Figs slit in the midst, boyl them in a pottle of fair running water, till it come to be thick, then mixe it with powder of Lycoras, Anniseeds and Sugar-candy, till it come to a stiff paste, then make pretty round balls thereof, and roul them up in butter, and give your horse three or four of them the next morning after his sweat or course, and ride him an hour after, and then set him up warm. Of scouring him.

After your horse hath been courst or sweat, and is as before said cold and dry, you shall then unbridle him, give him some few Wheat ears, and then at an hour or two after, give him a very sweet mash, then some bread after, then at his due hour dresse him, and give him when you find him thirsty some cold water, with a ball of your leaven dissolved into it, and so let him stand till you feed him for all night. Ordering after exercise.

General Rules for a Running Horse.

Course not your Horse sore for at least four or five dayes before you run your match, lest the soreness of his limbs abate him of his speed.

Except your horse be a very foul feeder muzzle him not above two or three nights before his match, and the night before his bloudy courses.

Give your horse as well his gentle courses, as his sharp courses upon the Race he must run, that he may as well find comfort as displeasure thereon.

In training your horse, observe not the number of the miles, but the labour fit for your horse.

Be sure upon the match day that your horse be empty, and that he take his rest untroubled, till you prepare to lead him forth.

Shooe your horse ever a day before you run him, that the pain of the hammers knocks may be out of his feet.

Saddle your horse on the Race day in the stable before you lead him forth, and fix both the pannel and the girths to his back and sides with shooe-makers wax, to prevent all dangers.

Lead your Horse to his course with all gentleness, and give him leave to smell to other horses dung, that thereby he may be inticed to stale and empty his body as he goes.

When you come to the place where you must start, first rub his Limbs well, then uncloath him, then take his back, and the word given, start him with all gentleness and quietness that may be, lest doing any thing rashly, you happen to choak him in his own wind.

And thus much for the ordering and dieting of the Running horse, and the particularities belonging to the same.

CHAP. VII.

The ordering of the Travelling Horse.

General Rules for a travelling horse.

NOw for our Husbandmans Travelling Horse, which is to carry him in his Journeys, and about his business in the Country, he shall first feed him with the best sweet hay, dry oats or dry beans and oats mixt together: in his travell he shall feed him according to his stomack, more or less, and in his rest at a certain

certain proportion; as half a peck at each watering, is utterly sufficient.

If you travel, feed your horse early, that he may take his rest soon.

In travel, by no means wash nor walk your horse, but be sure to rub him clean.

Water him a mile before you come to your Inne, or more, as shall lye in your Journey; or if you fail thereof, forbear it till next morning; for water hath often done hurt; want of water never did any.

Let your horse neither eat nor drink when he is extream hot, for both are unwholsome.

When the dayes are extream hot, labour your horse morning and evening, and forbear high-noon.

Take not your saddle off suddenly, but at leisure, and laying on the cloath, lay on the saddle again till he be cold.

Litter your Horse deep, and in the days of his rest, let it also lye under him.

Dress your horse twice a day when he rests, and once when he travells.

If the horse be stoned let him go to the soyl, and be purged with grass in *May*; a moneths time is long enough, and that grass which grows in Orchards under Trees is best.

Let him blood, Spring and Fall, for they are the best times to prevent sicknesses.

In your journying light at every steep hill, for it is a great refreshing and comfort to your horse.

Before you sleep, every Night in your journey see all your horses feet stopt with Oxe-dung, for it taketh away the heat of travel and surbating.

Many other necessary Rules there are, but so depending upon these already shewed, that who so keepeth them shall not be ignorant of any of the rest; for they differ more in name than nature.

CHAP. VIII.

How to cure all general inward ſickneſſes in horſes, which trouble the whole body; of Feavers of all ſorts, Plagues, Infections, and ſuch like.

SIckneſſes in general are of two kinds, one offending the whole body, the other a peculiar member: the firſt hidden and not viſible, the other apparent and known by his outward demonſtration. Of the firſt then, which offend the whole body, are Feavers of all ſorts as the Quotidian, the Tertian, the Quartan, the Continual, the Hittique, the Feavers in Autumn, in Summer, or in Winter, the Feaver by ſurfeit, Feaver Peſtilent, Feaver Accidental, or the general Plague, they are all known by theſe ſigns, much trembling, panting, and ſweating, a ſullen countenance that was wont to be cheerful, hot breath, faintneſs in labour, decay of ſtomach, and coſtiveneſs in the body; any, or all of which when you perceive, firſt let the horſe blood, and after The Cure. give him this drink: Take of *Selandine* roots leaves and all a good handful, as much *Wormwood* and as much *Rew*, waſh them well, and then bruiſe them in a mortar, which done, boyl them in a quart of Ale well, then ſtrain them and adde to the liquor half a pound of ſweet Butter, then being but luke-warm give it the horſe to drink, or half an ounce of *Diapente*, in a pinte of Muſkadine.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Head-ach, Frenzie, or Staggers.

THe ſigns to know theſe diſeaſes, which indeed are all of one nature, and work all one effect of mortality, are hanging down of the head, watry eyes, rage and reeling. And the The Cure. Cure is to let the horſe blood in the neck three mornings together, and every morning to take a great quantity, then after each morning blood-letting, to give the horſe this drink: Take a quart of Ale, and boyl it with a big white bread cruſt, then take it from the fire, and diſſolve three or four ſpoonfuls of honey in it, then luke-warm give it the horſe to drink, and cover his temples over with a plaiſter of Pitch; and keep his head exceeding warm, let his meat be little, and his Stable dark: but to give him the former

quan-

quantity of *Diapente*, either in Muskadine or Honey water is the best Cure.

CHAP. X.

Of the Sleeping Evill.

THe Sleeping Evil or Lethargy in Horses proceeds from cold flegmy moist humors, which bind up the vital parts and makes them dull and heavy. The signs are continual sleeping or desire thereunto. The Cure is, to keep him much waking, and twice in one week to give him as much sweet Soap (in nature of a Pill) as a Ducks egg, and then after give him to drink a little new milk and honey, which is the onely cure at the first for this disease. But to be certain, I pray look in my Master-Piece, and there you shall find the infirmity more largely discoursed of, this being but a general cure of all Cattel, and not particularly handled of horses, as that is. The Cure.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Falling Evill, Planet-strook, Night-Mare, or Palsie.

THough these diseases have several faces, and look as though there were much difference between them, yet they are in nature all one, and proceed all from one offence, which is only cold flegmatick humors, ingendred about the Brain, and benumming the Senses, weakning the Members, sometimes causing a horse to fall down, and then it is called the Falling evil; sometimes weakning but one member only, then it is called Planet-strook, sometimes oppressing a horses stomach, and making him sweat in his sleep, and then it is called the Night-Mare; and sometimes spoyling an especial member by some strange contraction, and then it is called a Palsie. The Cure for any of these infirmities is to give the horse this purging Pill: Take of *Tar* three spoonfuls, of sweet Butter the like quantity, beat them well together with the powder of *Lycoras*, *Anniseeds*, and *Sugar-Candy*, till it be like paste, then make it into three round balls, and put into each ball two or three cloves of Garlick, and so give them unto the horse; observing to warm him both before and after, and keep him fasting two or three hours likewise, both before and after. The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of the general Cramp, or Convulsion of Sinews.

CRamps are taken to be the contraction or drawing together of the sinews of any one member; but Convulsions are when the whole body, from the setting on of the head to the extreamest parts are generally contracted and stiffned. The Cure of either is, first to chase and rub the member contracted with Vinegar and common Oyl, and then to wrap it all over with wet Hay, or rotten Litter, or else with wet Woollen cloaths, either of which is a present remedy.

The Cure.

CHAP. XIII.

Of any Cough or Cold whatsoever, wet or dry, for any Consumption or putrifaction of the Lungs whatsoever.

A Cold is got by unnatural heats, and too suddain coolings, and these Colds ingender Coughs, and those Coughs, putrifaction or rottenness of the Lungs. The Cure therefore for them all in general, is to take a handful or two of the white and greenish Moss which grows upon an Oak-pole, or any old Oak-wood, and boyl it in a quart of milk till it be thick, and being cold turned to a Jelly, then strain it, and give it the Horse luke-warm every morning till his Cough end; or else take three quarters of an ounce of the Conserve of *Elicampane*, and dissolve it in a pint of Sack, and luke-warm give it the horse fasting; then ride him after it, and set him up warm, feed as at ordinary times; thus do three mornings together.

The Cure.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the running Glaunders, or the mourning of the Chine.

TAke of *Auripigmentum* two drams, of *Tussilaginis* made into powder as much, then mixing them together with Turpentine till they be like paste, and making thereof little cakes, dry them before the fire; then take a chafing-dish and coals, and laying one or two of the cakes thereon, cover them with a tunnel, and then the smoak rising, put the tunnel into the horses nostrils, and

and let the ſmoak go up into his head: which done, ride the horſe till he ſweat: do thus once every morning before he be watered, till the running at his noſtrils ceaſe, and the kernels under his chaps wear away.

CHAP. XV.

Of hide-bound, or conſumption of the fleſh.

HIde-bound or conſumption of the fleſh, proceeds from unreaſonable travel, diſorderly diet, and many ſurfeits. It is known by a general diſlike and leanneſs over the whole body, and by the ſticking of the skin cloſe to the body, in ſuch ſort that it will not riſe from the body. The Cure is, firſt to let the horſe bloud, and then give him to drink three or four mornings together a quart of new milk, with two ſpoonfuls of honey, and one ounce of *London* Treacle: then let his food be either ſodden Barly, warm Grains and Salt, or Beans ſpelted in a Mill, his drink Maſhes. The Cure.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Breaſt pain, or any other ſickneſs proceeding from the heart, as the Anticor, *and ſuch like.*

THeſe Diſeaſes proceed from too rank feeding, and much fatneſs; the ſigns are a faultring in his fore-legs, a diſableneſs to bow down his neck, and a trembling over all his body. The Cure is, to let him blood, and give him three mornings together two ſpoonfuls of *Diapente* in a quart of Ale or Beer, for it alone putteth away all infection from the heart. The Cure.

CHAP. XVII.

Of tyred Horſes.

IF your Horſe be tyred either in Journying or any Hunting match, your beſt help for him is to give him warm Urine to drink, and letting him blood in the mouth to ſuffer him to lick up and ſwallow the ſame: Then if you can come where any nettles are, to rub his mouth and ſheath well therewith: then gently to ride him untill you come to your reſting place, where ſet him up very warm, and before you go to bed give him ſixe ſpoonfuls of *Aqua vitæ* to drink, and as much provender as he will

will eat. The next morning rub his legs with sheeps-foot oyl, and it will bring fresh nimbleness unto his sinews.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of diseases in the Stomach, as Surfeits, loathing of Meat or Drink, or such like.

IF your horse with the glut of provender, or eating raw food, have given such offence to his stomach that he casteth up all he eateth or drinketh, you shall first give him a comfortable drench, as *Diapente*, or *Treaphamicon* in Ale or Beer; and then keeping him fasting, let him have no food but what he eateth out of your hand, which would be bread well bak't and old, and after every two or three bits a lock of sweet Hay: and his drink would be onely new milk till his stomach have gotten strength, and in a bag you shall commonly hang at his nose sowre brown bread steep'd in Vinegar, at which he must ever smell, and his stomach will quickly come again to his first strength.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Foundring in the Body.

FOundring in the body is of Surfeits the mortallest and soonest gotten: it proceedeth from intemperate riding a horse when he is fat, and then suddainly suffering him to take cold; then washing a fat horse, there is nothing sooner bringeth this Infirmity. The signs are sadness of countenance, staring hair, stiffness of limbs, and loss of belly: And the Cure is only to give him wholsome strong meat, as bread of clean beans, and warm drink, and for two or three mornings together a quart of Ale brewed with Pepper and Cinnamon, and an ounce of *London Treacle*.

The Cure.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hungry Evill.

THe hungry Evil is an unnatural and over-hasty greedinesse in a horse to devour his meat faster than he can chew it, and is only known by his greedy snatching at his meat, as if he would devour it whole. The Cure is, to give him to drink milk and Wheat meal mixt together by a quart at a time, and to feed him with provender by a little and a little till he forsake it.

The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the diseases of the Liver, as Inflammations, Obstructions, and Consumptions.

THe Liver, which is the vessel of blood, is subject to many diseases, according to the distemperature of the blood, and the signs to know it, is a stinking breath, and a mutual looking towards his body. And the Cure is to take *Aristolochia longa*, and boyl it in running water, till the half part be consumed, and let the horse drink continually thereof, and it will cure all evils about the Liver, or any inward conduits of blood. The Cure.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the diseases of the Gall, and especially of the Yellows.

FRom the over-flowing of the Gall, or rather want of the Gall, which is the vessel of Choler, spring many mortal diseases, especially the Yellows, which is an extream faint mortal sickness, if it be not prevented betime: the signes are yellowness of the eyes and skin, and chiefly underneath his upper lippe next unto his foreteeth, a sudden and faint falling down by the high way, or in the stable, and universal sweat over all the body. The cure is, first to let the horse blood in the neck, in the mouth and under the eyes, then take two-penny-worth of *Saffron*, which being dryed and made into fine powder, mix it with sweet butter, and in manner of a Pill give it in balls to the horse three mornings together; let his drink be warm, and his hay sprinkled with water: A quart of a strong decoction of *Selladine* helps it also. The Cure.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the sickness of the Spleen.

THe Spleen which is the vessel of Melancholy; when it is over-charged therewith grows painful, hard and great, in such sort, that sometimes it is visible. The signs to know it, is much groaning, hasty feeding, and a continual looking to his left side only. The Cure is *Egrimony*; and boyl a good quantity of it in the water, which the horse shall drink; and chopping the The Cure.

leaves ſmall; mix them very well with ſweet *May-Butter*, and give the horſe two or three good round balls thereof, in the manner of Pills.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Dropſie or Evil habit of the body.

THe Dropſie is that evil habit of the body, which engendred by ſurfeits and unreaſonable labour, altereth the colours and complexions of horſes, and changeth the hairs in ſuch an unnatural ſort, that a man ſhall not know the beaſt, with which he hath been moſt familiar. The Cure is, to take a handful or two of *Wormwood*, and boyling it in Ale or Beer, a quart or better, give it the horſe to drink luke-warm, morning and evening, and let him only drink his water at noon time of the day.

The Cure.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Chollick, Belly-ake, and Belly bound.

THe Chollick or Belly-ake is a fretting, gnawing or ſwelling of the Belly, or great bag, proceeding from windy humors, or from eating of green corn, or pulſe, hot grains without ſalt or labour, or bread dow bak't; And Belly-bound, is when a horſe cannot dung. The Cure of the Cholick or Belly-ake is, to take good ſtore of the hearb *Dill*, and boyl it in the water you give your horſe to drink: but if he cannot dung, then you ſhall boyl in his water good ſtore of the hearb called *Fenugreek*, and it will make him looſe without danger or hurting.

The Cure.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Laxe or Bloody-Flux.

THe Laxe or Bloody-flux, is an unnatural Looſneſs in a horſes body, which not being ſtayed, will for want of other excrement, make a horſe void blood only. The Cure is, take a handful of the hearb *Shepheards Purſe*, and boyl it in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and when it is luke-warm, take the ſeeds of the hearb *Woodroſe* ſtampt, and put it therein, and give it the horſe to drink.

The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the falling of the Fundament.

THis cometh through mislike and weakness, and the Cure is, Take *Town-Cresses*, and having dryed them to powder, with your hand put up the Fundament, and then strew the powder thereon; after it, lay a little honey thereon, and then strew more of the powder, mixt with the powder of *Cummin*, and it helpeth. The Cure.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Bots and Worms of all sorts.

THe Bots and gnawing of Worms, is a grievous pain, and the signs to know them, is the horses oft beating his belly and tumbling and wallowing on the ground, with much desire to lye on his back. The Cure is, take the leaves chopt of the hearb *Saven*, and mix it with Honey and Butter, and make two or three balls thereof, make the horse swallow them down, and it will help him. The Cure.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the pain in the Kidneys, pain-piss, or the Stone.

ALl these diseases spring from one ground, which is only gravel and hard matter gathered together in the Kidneys, and so stopping the conduits of Urine: The signs are only that the horse will often strain to piss, but cannot. The cure is to take a handful of *Maiden-hair*, and steep it all night in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the horse to drink every morning till he be well: this will breake any stone whatsoever in a horse. The Cure.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Strangullion.

THis is a soreneſſe in the horses yard, and a hot, burning smarting when he pisseth: the signes are, he will pisse oft, yet but a drop or two at once. The cure is, to boyl in the water which he drinketh, good store of the hearb *Mayth*, *or Hogges-fennel*, and it will cure him. The Cure.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of Pissing Blood.

THis commeth with over-travelling a horse, or travelling a Horse sore in the winter when he goeth to grasse. The Cure is, take *Aristolochia longa*, a handfull and boyl it in a quart of Ale, and give it the horse to drink luke-warm, and give him also rest.

The Cure.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Coit-evill, mattering of the yard, falling of the yard, shedding the seed.

ALL these evills proceed from much lust in a horse; and the cure is, the powder of the hearb *Avis*, and the leaves of *Betony*; stamp them with white wine, to a moyst salve, and annoynt the sore therewith, and it will heal all imperfection in the yard: but if the horse shed his seed, then beat Venice Turpentine and Sugar together, and give him every morning a good round ball thereof, untill the flux stay.

The Cure.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the particular diseases in Mares, barrennesse, consumption, rage of love, casting Foals, hardnes to foal, and how to make a Mare cast her Foal.

IF you'l have your Mare barren, let good store of the hearb *Agnus Castus* be boyled in the water she drinketh: if you would have her fruitful, then boyl good store of *Mother-wort* in the water which she drinketh: If she loose her belly, which sheweth a consumption of the womb, you shall then give her a quart of Brine to drink, *Mugwort* being boyled therein. If your Mare through pride of keeping grow into extream lust, so that she will neglect her food, through the violence of her fleshy appetite, as it is often seen amongst them, you shall house her for two or three dayes, and give her every morning a ball of Butter and *Agnus Castus* chopt together; if you would have a Mare to cast a Foal, take a handfull of *Dittany*; and boyl it in a quart of Ale, and it will deliver her presently. If she cannot Foale, take the hearb *Horsemint*, and either dry it or stamp it, and take the pow-

der

der or the juyce, and mixe it with ſtrong ale; and give it the Mare and it will help her: If your Mare from former bruiſings or ſtrokes be apt to caſt her Foals, as many are, you ſhall keep her at graſſe very warme, and once in a week, give her a good warm maſh of drink: this ſecretly knitteth beyond expectation.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of drinking venome, as Horſe-leaches, Hens dung, or ſuch like.

IF your Horſe have drunk Horſe-leaches, hens dung, feathers, or ſuch like venemous thing, which you ſhall know by his panting, ſwelling, or ſcouring, you ſhall take the hearb *Sow-thiſtle*, and drying it, beat it into powder, and put three ſpoonfuls thereof into a quart of ale, and give it the horſe to drink.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Suppoſitories, Clyſters, and Purgations.

IF your horſe by ſickneſſe, ſtrict dyet, or too vehement travel grow dry and coſtive in his body, as it is ordinary, the eaſieſt means in extremity to help him, is to give him a ſupoſitory: the beſt of which is, to take a candle of four in the pound, and cut off five inches at the bigger end, and thruſting it up a good way with your hand into his fundament, preſently clap down his tayle, and hold it hard to his tuell, a quarter of an hour, or half an hour; and then give him leave to dung; but if this be not ſtrong enough, then you ſhall give him a Clyſter, and that is, take four handfuls of the hearb *Aniſe*, and boyl it in a pottle of running water, till half be conſumed, then take the decoction, and mixe it with a pint of Sallet-oyl; and a pretty quantity of ſalt, and with a Cliſter-pipe give it, at his tuel. But if this be too weak, then give him a purgation thus: Take twenty Raiſins of the Sun without ſtones, and ten Figs ſlit, boyl them in a pottle of runing water till it come to a jelly; then mixe it with the powder of Lycoris, Anniſeeds, and Sugar-candy, till it be like paſte; then make it into round balls; and roule it in ſweet butter, and ſo give it the horſe, to the quantity of three hen egs.

The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of Neesings and Frictions.

THere be other two excellent helps for sick horses; as Frictions and Neesings: the first to comfort the outward parts of the body, when the vitall powers are astonished: the other to purge the head when it is stopt with phlegme, cold or other thick humors. And of Frictions, the best is vinegar and Patch-grease melted together, and very hot chafed into the horses body against the hair. And to make a horse neese, there is nothing better, than to take a bunch of Pellitory of Spain, and binding it unto a stick, thrust it up a horses nostrils, and it will make him neese without hurt or violence.

CHAP. XXXVII

Of diseases in the eyes: as watry-eyes, blood-shotten, eyesdim eyes, moon eyes, stroke in the eye, wart in the eye, inflammation in the eye, Pearle, Pin, web, or Haw.

UNto the eye belongeth many diseases, all which have their true signs in their names, and as touching that which is watry, blood-shotten, dim, moon, stricken or inflamed, they have all one cure. The cure is, take Wormwood, and beat it in a Mortar with the gall of a Bull, strain it, and anoynt the horses eyes therewith, and it is an approved remedy. But for the Wart, Pearl, or Pin or Web, which are evills grown in, and upon the eye to take them off, take the juyce of the hearb Betin, and wash his eyes therewith, and it will weat the spots away. For the Haw every Smith can cut it out.

The Cure.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the Impost hume in the ear, Pole-evill, Fistula, swelling after blood-letting, any gald back, canker in the Withers, sitfast, Wens, Navel-gall, or any hollow Ulcer.

THese diseases are so apparent and common, that they need no further description but their names, and the most certain cure is to take clay of a mud or lome wall, without lime, the straws and all, and boyling it in strong vinegar, apply it plaister wise

The Cure.

wise to the sore, and it will of its own nature search to the botome and heale it; provided, that if you see any dead or proud flesh arise, that then you either eat or cut it away.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the Vives.

FOr the *Vives*, which is an inflammation of the kernels between the chap and the neck of the horse; take Pepper one pennyworth, of *Swines grease* one spoonful, the juyce of a handful of Rew, Vinegar two spoonfulls, mixe them together and then put it equally into both the horses eares, and then tye them up with two flat laces, then shake the eares, that the medicine may go down, which done, let the horse blood in the neck, and in the temple veins, and it is a certain cure.

CHAP. XL.

Of the strangle, or any boyl, botch or other Imposthume whatsoever.

ALL these diseases, are of one nature, being onely hard Byles or impostumes gathered together by evil humours, either between the chaps, or else where on the body. The cure is, take *Southernwood*, and dry it to powder, and with Barley meal and the yelk of an Egg make it into a salve, and lay it to the Impostume and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it. The Cure.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the Canker in the Nose, or any other part of the body.

TO heal any Canker in what part soever it be: Take the juice of *Plantane*, as much *Vinegar*, and the same weight of the powder of *Allom*; and with it anoint the sore twice or thrice a day, and it will kill it and cure it.

CHAP. XLII.

Of stanching of blood, whether it be at the Nose, or proceed from any wound.

IF your Horse bleed violently at the nose, & it will not be staid, then you shall take *Betony*, and stamp it in a Mortar with Bay-salt, or other white Salt, and stop it into the horses nose, or apply

ply it to the wound, and it will ſtanch it, but if you be ſuddenly taken; as riding by the high-way or otherwiſe, and cannot get this herb, you ſhall take any Woollen cloath, or any felt hat, and with a Knife ſcrape a fine Lint from it, and apply it to the bleeding place, and it will ſtanch it preſently.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the diſeaſes in the mouth, as bloody Rifts, Ligs, Lampas, Camery, Inflammation, Tongue-hurt, or the Barbs.

IF you find any infirmity in your horſes mouth, as the bloody rifts, which are chaps or rifts in the palate of the horſes mouth; the ligs, which are little puſtules or bladders within the horſes lips: the Lampaſs, which is an excreſſion of fleſh above the teeth; the Camery, which is little Warts in the roof of the mouth: Inflammations, which are bliſters: Barbs, which are two little paps under the tongue, or any hurt on the tongue by bit or otherwiſe, you ſhall take the leaves of Wormwood, and the leaves of *Shirtwit*, and beat them in a Mortar with a little Honey, and with it anoint the ſores, and it will heal them; As for the Lampaſs, they muſt be burnt away, which the ignorantſt Smith can eaſily do.

The Cure.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of pain in the Teeth, or looſe Teeth.

FOr any pain in the Teeth, take Betony and ſeeth it in Ale or Vinegar till a half part be conſumed, and waſh all the gums therewith: but if they be looſe, then only rub them with the leaves of *Elicampane* or *Horſe-chelm* after they have been let blood, & it will faſten them.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Crick in the Neck.

FOr the Crick in the Neck, you ſhall firſt chafe it with the Friction before ſpecified, and then anoint and bath it with Sope and Vinegar boyled together.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the falling in the Creſt, mangineſs of the Main, or ſhedding of the hair.

ALl theſe diſeaſes proceed from poverty, miſſlike, or over-riding; and the beſt cure of the falling of the Creſt, is bloud-letting, and proud keeping, with ſtore of meat; for ſtrength and fatneſs ever will raiſe up the Creſt; but if the main be mangy, you ſhall anoint it with butter, and Brimſtone, and if the hair fall away, then take Southernwood and burn it to aſhes, then take thoſe aſhes, and mixing them with common oyl, anoint the place therewith, and it will bring hair preſently, ſmooth, thick, and fair.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of pain in the Withers.

A Horſes Withers are ſubject to many griefs and ſwellings which proceed from cold humors, ſometimes from evill ſaddles, therefore if at any time you ſee any ſwelling about them, you ſhall take the herb Hearts-tongue and boyl it with the oyl of Roſes, and very hot apply it to the ſore, and it will aſſwage it, or elſe break it and heal it.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of ſwaying the Back or weakneſs in the Back.

THeſe two infirmities are dangerous, and may be eaſed, but never abſolutely cured: therefore where you find them, take Colewort and boyl them in oyl, and mixing them with a little Bean meal charge the Back, and it will ſtrengthen it.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of Itch in the tayl, or of the general Scab and Mangineſs, or of the Farcy.

FOr any of theſe diſeaſes, take freſh greaſe, & yellow Arſnick, mixe them together, and where the Mangineſs or Itch is, there rub it hard in, the ſore being made raw: But if it be for Farcy, then with a Knife ſlit all the Knots, both hard and ſoft, and then rub in the Medicine: which done, tye up the horſe, ſo as he

may not come to bite himself, and then after he hath stood two or three hours, take old piss and salt boyl'd together, provided alwayes that you first let him blood, and take good store from him, and also give him every morning a strong scouring, or a strong purge, both which are shewed before.

CHAP. L.

Of any halting which cometh by strain, or stroak either before or behind from the shoulders or hips, down to the hoof.

THere be many infirmities which make a horse halt, as pinching the shoulder, wrench in the shoulder, wrench in the nether joynt, splatting the shoulder, shoulder pight, strains in the joynts, and such like, all which since they happen by one accident, as namely, by the violence of some slip or strain, they may be cured by one Medicine, and it is thus: After you have found where the grief is, as you may do by griping and pinching every several member, then where he most complaineth, there is his most grief. You shall take (if the strain be new) Vinegar, Bole-armenick, the whites of Eggs and Bean-flowr, and having beaten them to a perfect salve, lay them very hot to the sore place, and it will cure it; but if the strain be old, then take Vinegar and Butter, and melting them together with Wheat bran, make it into a pultis, and lay it to the sore as hot as may be, and it will without doubt take away the grief.

CHAP. LI.

Of Foundring in the Feet.

OF foundring there be two sorts, a dry and a wet: the dry foundring is incurable; the wet is thus to be helpt: First, pare all the foals of his feet so thin, that you may see the quick, then let him blood at every toe, and let them bleed well, then stop the vein with Tallow and Rosen, and having tackt hollow shooes on his feet, stop them with Bran, Tarre and Tallow, as boyling hot as may be, and renew it once in two days, for a week together, then exercise him much, and his feet will come to their true use and nimbleness.

CHAP.

CHAP. LII.

Of the Splent, Curb, Bone-spaven, or any knobby or bony excression or Ring-bone.

A Splent is a bony excression under the Knee or the fore-legg, the Curb is the like behind the hinder hough, the Spaven is the like on the inside of the hinder hough, and the Ring-bone is the like on the cronet of the hoof. And the cure is, first upon the top of the excression, make a slit with your Knife the length of a Barly-corn, or a little more, and then with a fine cornet raise the skin from the bone, and having made it hollow, the compasse of the excression, and no more; take a little lint, and dip it into the Oyl of *Origanum*, and thrust it into the hole and cover the knob, and so let it abide till you see it rot, and that nature casteth out both the medicine and the core. As for the Ring-bone you shall need to scarrifie and anoint it with the oyl only. The Cure.

CHAP. LIII.

Of the Malander, Selander, Pain-scratches, Mellet, Mules, Crown-scabs, and such like.

FOr any of these Sorances, you shall take Verdigrease and soft grease, and grinding them together to an Oyntment, put it in a Box by it self; then take Wax, hogs-grease, and Turpentine, of each alike, and being melted together, put that salve into another Box: then when you come to dress the sore; after you have taken off the scab and made it raw, you shall anoint it with your green salve of *Verdigrease* and fresh grease only for two or three dayes; it is a sharp salve, and will kill the cankerous humor: then when you see the sore look fair, you shall take two parts of the yellow salve, and one part of the green salve, and mixing them together, anoint the sore therewith till it be whole, making it stronger or weaker as you shall find occasion.

CHAP. LIV.

Of an upper Attaint, or nether Attaint, or any hurt by over-reaching.

THese attaints or strokes or cuts by over-reaching either on the back sinew of the fore-legg, on the heels or nether joynts

and may be safely healed by the same former medicine and means which healeth the Malander or Selander, in the former Chapter: only for your over-reaches, you shall before you apply your salve lay the sore plain and open, without hollowness, and wash it with beer and salt, or vinegar and salt.

CHAP. LV.

Of the infirmities of hoofs, as false quarters, loose hoofs, casting hoofs, hoof bound, hoof running, hoof brittle, hoof hurt, hoof soft, hoof hard, or generally to preserve hoofs.

THe hoof is subject to many miseries: as first to false quarters, which cometh by pricking, and must be helpt by good shooing, where the shooe must bear on every part of the foot, but upon the false quarters only. If the hoof be loose, anoint it with pitch of *Burgundy*, and it will knit it: if it be clean cast off, then pitch of *Burgundy* and tallow molten together, will bring a new; if it be bound or strained, it must be very well opened at the heels, the soal kept moist, and the cronet anointed with the fat of Bacon and Tar. If the frush of the feet run with stinking matter, it must be stopt with Soot, Turpentine, and Bole-armenick mixt together: if it be brittle or broken, then anoint it with Pitch and Linseed Oyl, molten to a soft salve; if it be soft then stop it with Sope, and the ashes of a burnt Felt mixt together; if the hoofs be hard, lay hot burning Cinders upon them, and then stop them with Tow and Tallow: and generally for the preserving of all good hoofs, anoint them daily with the sward or rind of fat Bacon.

CHAP. LVI.

Of the blood-spaven, or hough-bony, or any other unnatural swelling, from what cause soever it proceedeth.

THese two sorances, or pustules, or soft round swellings, the first on the inside of the hinder hough, and the other on the very huckle on the hough behind, they are soft and very sore: And
The Cure. the Cure is, first to take up the vein above, and let it bleed only from below, then having knit it fast with two shoo-makers ends

OR

on both sides the slit, cut the vein in two pieces: then take Linseed and bruise it in a Morter, then mixe it with Cow-dung and heat it in a frying-pan, and so apply it to the swelling only, and if it break and run, then heal it with a plaister of pitch, and the horse shall never be troubled with Spaven more: but if the swelling come by strain or bruise, then take patch-grease, and melting it, anoint the sore therewith, holding a hot Iron near it to sink in the grease, then fold a linnen cloath about it, and it will asswage all swellings whatsoever.

CHAP. LVII.

Of Wind-galls.

THese are little blebs, or soft swellings on each side the Fetlock, procured by much travell on hard and stony wayes. The Cure is to prick them and to let out the Jelly, and then dry up the sore with a plaister of pitch. The Cure.

CHAP. LVIII.

Of Enterfairing or Shackle-gall, or any gallings.

ENterfairing is hewing one legge on another, and striking off the skinne, it proceedeth from weaknesse or straitnesse of the horses pace; and Shackle-gall is any gall underneath the Fetlock. The cure is, to anoint them with Turpentine and Verdigrease mixt together, or Turpentine alone, if it rankle not too much. The Cure.

CHAP. LIX.

Hurts on the Cronet, as the Quitter-bone, or Matlong.

THe Quitter-bone is a hollow Ulcer on the top of the cronet, and so is the Matlong, and the Cure is; First, to taint it with Verdigrease untill you have eaten out the core, and made the wound very clean; then you shall heal it up with the same salves that you heal the Scratches. The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. LX.

Of Wounds in the foot, as gravelling, pricking, figgs, retait or cloying.

IF your horse have any wound in his foot, by what mischance soever, you shall first search it, and see that it be clear of any nayl, point, or other splint to annoy it, then wash it very well with white Wine and Salt, and after taint it with the Oyntment called *Ægyptiacum*, and then lay hot upon the taint with *Flaxhurds, Turpentine, Oyl* and *Wax* mingled together, and anoint all the top of the hoof and cronet with *Bole-armenick* and *Vinegar*: do this once a day untill the sore be whole.

CHAP. LXI.

To draw out a Stub, or Thorn.

TAke the herb Dittany, and bruise it in a Mortar with *Black Soap*, and lay it to the sore, and it will draw out the splent, iron, thorn, or stub.

CHAP. LXII.

Of the Aubury, or Tetter.

THe *Aubury* is a bloody Wart on any part of the horses body and the Tetter is a Cancerous Ulcer like it: The cure of both is with a hot iron to sear the one plain to the body, and to scarrifie the other: then take the juyce of *Plantane*, and mixe it with *Vinegar, Honey, and the ponder of Allom*, and with it anoint the sore till it be whole.

The Cure.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of the Cords or Stringhalt.

THis is an unnatural bending of the sinews; which imperfection, a horse bringeth into the world with him; and therefore it is certain it is incurable, and not painful, but only an eye-sore, yet the best way to keep it from worse inconvenience, is to bathe his limbs in the decoction of *Coleworts*.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIV.

Of Spur-galling, or fretting the skin, and hair.

FOr this there is nothing better than piss and salt, with which wash the sore daily.

CHAP. LXV.

Of healing any old Sore or Wound.

FResh Butter, and the herb *Ameos*, chopt and beaten together to a salve will heal any wound or any old sore.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of Sinewes being cut.

IF the horses sinews be cut, take the leaves of wild *Nep* or *Woodbine*, and beating them in a mortar with *May butter*, apply it to the sore, and it will knit the sinews.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of eating away any dead flesh.

TAke *Stubwort*, and lap it in a red dock leaf, and roast it in the hot Cinders, and lay it to the sore, and it will eat away any dead flesh. So will Verdigrease, burnt Allom, or Lime. The Cure.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of Knots in the Joynts.

PAtch-grease applyed as is before shewed for swellings, will take away any hard Knots in the flesh, or upon the sinews.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of venemous Wounds, as biting with a mad Dog, tusks of Bores, Serpents or such like.

FOr any of these mortal or venemous Wounds, take *Yarrow*, *Calamint*, and the grains of Wheat, and beat them in a mortar with water of *Southernwood*, and make it into a salve, and lay it to the sore, and it will heal it safely.

CHAP. LXX.

Of Lice or Nits.

THis filthiness of Vermine is bred in a horse through unnatural dislike and poverty: The Cure is, take the juyce of *Beets* and *Staves acre* beaten together, and with it anoint the Horses Body over, and it will make him clean. The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of defending a Horse from Flyes.

TAke the juyce of Pellitory of *Spain*, and mixing it with milk, anoint the Horses Belly therewith, and no Flies will trouble him.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of broken Bones, or Bones out of joynt.

AFter you have placed the Bones in their true places, take the *Ferosmund*, and beat it in a morter with the Oyl of Swallows, and anoint all the members; then splent it, and roul it up, and in fifteen dayes the Bones will knit and be strong.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of drying up sores when they be almost whole.

ALlom burnt, unslak'd Lime, the ashes of an old shooe-sole burnt, or Oyster-shels burnt; any of these simply by themselves, will dry up any sore, though never so moyst.

CHAP. LXXIV.

A most famous Receit to make a Horse that is lean, and full of inward sickness, sound and fat in fourteen dayes, having been often approved of.

TAke of Wheat meal six pound, Annifeeds two ounces, Cummin seeds six drams, Carthamus one dram and a half, Fenugreek seeds one ounce and two drams, Brimstone one ounce and a half, Sallet oyl one pint, Honey one pound and a half, White Wine four pints; this must be made into paste, the hard simples being pounded into pouder, and finely seaft, and then kneaded together, and so made into balls as big as a mans fist, then every watering consume one of those balls into his cold water which he drinketh for morning and evening for fifteen dayes together; and if at the first he be dainty to drink the water, yet care not, but let him fast till he drink it, and after he begins to take it, he will drink it with great greedinesse.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXV.

How to make a white Star.

SLit the Horſes Fore-head the length of your Star, and then raiſe the Skin up with a cronet, and put in a plate of Lead as big as the Star, and let it remain ſo two or three days together: and then let it out and preſs down the Skin with your hand, that Hair will fall away, and white will come in the place: or to ſcald his Face or Skin with a ſower Apple roaſted, will bring white Hair: But to make a black Star, or a red Star in a Horſes Fore-head, I refer it for you to look and approve of my *Maſter-peice*, which belongeth only to that, for to be exactly diſcourſed of, that being only a general cure of all Cattell.

The end of the Horſe.

The general Cure and Ordering of the Bull, Cow, Calfe or Oxe.

CHAP. I.

Of the Bull, Cow, Calfe or Oxe, their ſhape and breed, uſe, choice, and preſervation.

FOr as much, as the Male of all Creatures are the principal in the breed and generation of things, and that the Fruit which iſſueth from their Seed participateth moſt with their outward ſhapes, and inward qualities, I think fitteſt in this place, where I intend to treat of Horned Cattel and Neat, to ſpeak firſt of the choice of a fair Bull, being the breeders principalleſt inſtrument of profit. You ſhall underſtand then, that of our Engliſh Cattel, (for I will not ſpeak of thoſe in *Italy*, and other Forrain Countries, as other Authors do, and forget mine own) the beſt are bred in *York-ſhire*, *Darby-ſhire*, *Lancaſhere*, *Stafford-ſhire*, *Lincoln-ſhire* *Glocester-ſhire*, *and Somerſet-* The Country for breed.

ſhire, thoſe that were bred in *York-ſhire*, *Darby-ſhire*, *Lanca-ſhire* and *Stafford-ſhire*, are generally all black of colour, and they whoſe blackneſs is pure, and their Hairs like velvet, are eſteemed beſt; they have exceeding large horns, and very white with black tips; they are of ſtately ſhape, big, round, and well huckled together in every member, ſhort joynted and moſt comely to the eye, ſo that they are eſteemed excellent in the Market: thoſe in *Lincoln-ſhire* are for the moſt part Pide, with more white then the other colours, their horns little and crooked, of bodies exceeding tall, long and large, lean and thin thighed, ſtrong hoved, not apt to ſurbait, and are indeed fitteſt to labour and draught, Thoſe in *Somerſet-ſhire* and *Gloceſter-ſhire*, are generally of a blood red colour, in all ſhapes like unto thoſe in *Lincoln-ſhire*, and fitteſt for their uſes. Now to mix a race of theſe and the black ones together is not good, for their ſhapes and colours are ſo contrary, that their iſſues are very uncomely: therefore I would wiſh all men to make their breeds, either ſimply from one and the ſame kind, or elſe to mix *York-ſhire* with *Stafford-ſhire*, with *Lanca-ſhire* or *Darby-ſhire*, with one of the black races, and ſo likewiſe *Lincoln-ſhire*, with *Somerſet-ſhire*, or *Somerſet-ſhire*, with *Gloceſter-ſhire*.

Of not mixing and making of races.

Now for the ſhapes of your Bull: he would be of a ſharp and quick countenance, his horns the larger the better, his neck fleſhy, his belly long and large, his fore-head broad and curled, h eyes black and large, his ears rough within, and hair like Velve his Muzzel large and broad at the upper Lip, but narrow an ſmall at the neather, his Noſtrils crooked within, yet wide an open, his dew-lap extending from his neather Lip down to h fore-booths, large ſide, thin and hairy, his breſt rough and big, his Shoulders large, broad and deep; his ribs broad and wide, h back ſtraight and flat, even to the ſetting on of his tayle, wh would ſtand high, his huckle bones round and fair appearing, making his buttocks ſquare, his thighs round, his Legs ſtrait and ſhort joynted, his Knees round and big, his hoofes or claws long and hollow, his tayl long and buſh-haired, his Piſle round and alſo well haired. Theſe Bulls as they are for breed, ſo they are excellently good for the draught, only they naturally draw better ſingle, like horſes, then in the yoke, like Oxen: the reaſon as I ſuppoſe being, becauſe they can hardly be matcht in an equal manner.

The ſhape of the Bull

The uſe of the Bull.

Now

Now for the Cow, you ſhall chuſe her of the ſame Country with your Bull, and as near as may be of one colour, only her bag or udder would ever be white, with four teats and no more, her belly would be round and large, her forehead broad and ſmooth, and all other parts ſuch as are before ſhewed in the male kind. Of the Cow, and her ſhape.

The uſe of the Cow is two-fold, either for the Dairy or for breed: the Red Cow giveth the beſt milk, and the black Cow bringeth forth the goodlieſt Calfe. The young Cow is the beſt for breed, yet the indifferent old are not to be refuſed. That Cow which giveth milk longeſt is beſt for both purpoſes, for ſhe which giveth milk not long, but becomes dry, looſeth half her profit, and is leſs fit for teeming: for commonly they are ſubject to feed, and that ſtraineth the Womb or Matrix. Of her uſe.

Now for calves: there are two wayes of breeding them, the one to let them run with their Dams all the year, which is beſt and maketh the goodlieſt beaſt: the other to take them from their Dams, after their firſt ſucking, and ſo bring them up upon the finger, with flotten milk, the cold only being taken away and no more; for to give a young Calfe hot milk, is preſent death, or very dangerous. If your Calfe be calved in five dayes after the change: which is called the *Prime*, do not rear it, for moſt aſſuredly it will have the Sturdy, therefore preſerve it only for the Butcher; alſo when you preſerve thoſe male Calves, which ſhall be Bulls, then geld the reſt for Oxen, and the younger they are gelt the better: the beſt time for rearing of Calves is from *Michaelmas* till *Candlemas*. A Calfe would be nouriſhed with milk twelve weeks, only a fortnight before you wean it from milk, let the milk be mixt with water. After your Calfe hath drunk one moneth; you ſhall take the fineſt, ſweeteſt and ſofteſt hay you can get, and putting little wiſps into cloven ſticks, place them ſo as the Calfe may come to them and learn to eat Hay. After our Ladies day, when the weather is fair, you may turn your Calves to graſs, but by no meanes let it be ranke, but ſhort and ſweet, ſo that he may get it with ſome labour. Of Calves, and their nouriſhing. Obſervations.

Now of the Oxe: you ſhall underſtand that the larger are the beſt and moſt profitable, both for draught or feeding, for he is the ſtrongeſt to indure labour, and beſt able to containe both fleſh Of the Oxe and his uſe.

and tallow. Now for his shape it differeth nothing from that of the Bull, only his Face would be smooth, and his Belly deeper. That Oxe is fittest for the yoke which is of gentle nature, and most familiar with the Man. In matching your Oxen for the yoke, let them be near as may be, of one height, Spirit and strength, for the stronger will ever wrong the weaker, and the duller will injure him that is of freer Spirit, except the driver be careful to keep the dull Oxe to his labour. Oxen for the yoke would by no means be put beyond their ordinary pace: for violence in travel heats them, heat breeds surfeits, and surfeits those diseases which makes them unapt to feed or for any other use of goodness. Your Oxe for the yoke will labour well with Barley-straw or Pease-straw, and for blend fodder, which is Hay and Straw mixed together, he will desire no better feeding.

Of his Food for labour.

Oxen to feed for the Butcher.

Now for your Oxe to feed, hee would as much as might be, be ever lusty and young of years, or if old, yet healthful and bruised, which you shall know by a good taile, and a good Pyzel, for if the Hair of one or both be lost, then he is a waster, and he will be long in feeding. If you do see the Oxe doth lick himself all over, it is a good sign that he is market-able and well fed, for it shews soundness, and that the Beast taketh a joy in himself: yet whilst he doth so lick himself he feedeth not, for his own pride hindereth him, and therefore the Husbandman will lay the Oxes own dung upon his hide, which will make him leave licking and fall to his Food. Now if you go to chuse a fat Beast you shall handle his hindmost Rib, and if it be soft and loose like down, then it shews the Oxe is outwardly well fed: so doth soft huckle-bones, and a big natch round and knotty: if his Cod be big and full, it shews he is well tallowd, and so doth the crop behind the Shoulders: if it be a Cow, then handle her Navil, and if that be big, round and soft, surely she is well tallowed. Many other observations there are, but they be so well known, and common in every mans use, that they need no curious demonstration.

To preserve Cattel in health.

Now for the preservation of these Cattel in good and perfect health, it shall be meet that for the young and lusty, & indeed generally for all sorts, except Calves, to let them blood twice in the year, namely the Spring and Fall, the Moon being in any of the lower

lower signs, and also to give them to drink of the pickle of *Olives*, mixed with a head of *Garlick* bruised therein; and for your Calves, be only careful that they go not too soon to grass, and small danger is to be feared. Now notwithstanding all a mans carefulness, Beasts dayly do get infirmities; and often fall into mortal extremities: peruse therefore these Chapters following, and you shall find cure for every particular disease.

CHAP. II.

Of the Feaver in Cattel.

CAttel are most subject unto a Feaver, and it cometh either from surfeit of blood, being raw and musty, or from flux of cold humors ingendred by cold keeping; the signs are trembling, heavy eyes, a foaming mouth, and much groaning: and the cure is, *you shall let him blood, and then give him to drink a quart of Ale, in which is boyled, three or four Roots of Plantane, and two spoonfuls of the best London Treacle, and let his Hay be sprinkled with Water.* The Cure.

CHAP. III.

Of any inward sickness in Cattel.

FOr any inward sickness or drooping in Cattel, take a quart of strong Ale, and boyl it with a handful of Wormwood, and half a handful of Rue; then strain it, and add to it two spoonfuls of the juyce of Garlick, and as much of the juyce of Housleek, and as much *London Treacle*, and give it the Beast to drink being no more but luke-warm.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Disease in the Head, as the Sturdy or Turning-evil.

THis disease of the Sturdy is known by a continual turning about of the Beast in one place; and the cure is to cast the Beast, and having made his feet fast, to slit the upper part of his forehead crosse-wise about four inches each way, then turning up the Skin and laying the Skull bare, cut a piece out of the Skull two inches square or more; then look, and next unto the panicle of the Brain, you shall see a bladder lye full of water and blood, which The Cure.

which you ſhall very gently take out, and throw away; then anoint the place with warm freſh Butter, turn down the Skins, and with a needle and a little Red ſilk, ſtitch it cloſe together; then lay on a hot Plaiſter of Oyl, Turpentine, Wax, and a little Roſin melted together with Flax-hurds, and ſo folding warm woollen cloath about the head, let the beaſt riſe, and ſo remain three or four dayes ere you dreſs it again, and then heal it up like another wound, only obſerve in this cure, by no means touch the brain, for that is mortal, and then the help is both common, and moſt eaſie.

CHAP. VI.

Of Diſeaſes in the eyes of Cattel, as the Haw, a Stroak, Inflammation, Weeping, or the Pinne or Webbe.

FOr any generall ſoreneſs in the eyes of Cattel, take the water of *Eye-bright*, mixt with juyce of *Houſleek*, and waſh them therewith, and it will recover them: but if a Haw breed herein then you ſhall cut it out, which every ſimple Smith can do. But for a Stroak, Inflammation, Pin or Web, which breeds excreſions upon the eyes; take a new laid Egge, and put out half the white: then fill it up with Salt, and a little Ginger, and roſte it extrem hard in hot Cinders: which done, beat it to powder ſhell and all; but before you roaſt it, wrap it in a wet cloath, and put of this powder into the beaſts eye, and it will heal and cure it.

CHAP. VI.

Of diſeaſes in the mouth, as barbs under the tongue, blain on the tongue, teeth-looſe, or tongue venomed.

THoſe Barbs, or paps which grow under the tongues of Cattell, and being inflamed do hinder them from feeding, you ſhall with a keen pair of ſheers cut away cloſe by the fleſh, and if they bleed much, (as they will do if they be rank) you ſhall then with a red hot bodkin ſeare them, and drop on the top of the ſeared places a drop or two of Roſin and Butter mixt together; but if they bleed not, then only rub them with Sage and Salt, and they will heal, Now for the Blain on the tongue, of ſome called the Tin-blain, it is a bliſter which groweth at the roots

roots of the tongue, and cometh through heat of the Stomach and much chafing, and is oft very mortal, for it will riſe ſo ſuddenly and ſo big that it will ſtop the wind of the Beaſt. The Cure is, to thruſt your hand into the mouth of the Beaſt, and drawing out his tongue, with your nayl to break the bliſter, and then to waſh the ſore place with ſtrong brine or Sage, Salt, and Water: if you find more bliſters then one, break them all, and waſh them, and it is a preſent cure. Now for looſe teeth, you ſhall let the Beaſt blood in his gums, and under his tayle, then waſh his chaps with Sage and Woodbine leaves, boyld in brine: laſtly, if the tongue be venomed, which you ſhall know by the unnatural ſwelling thereof, you ſhall take Plantane and boyling it with Vinegar and Salt, waſh the tongue therewith, and it will cure it. The Cure.

CHAP. VII.

Of diſeaſes in the Neck, as being galled, bruiſed, ſwoln, out of joynt or having the Cloſh.

IF any Oxes neck be galled, bruiſed, or ſwoln with the yoke: take the leaves of round *Ariſtolochia*, and beating them in a Mortar with Tallow or freſh Greaſe, anoint the ſore place therewith, and it will not only heal it, but any ſtrain in the Neck, even if the bone be a little diſordered. Now for the *Cloſh* or *Clowſe* which cauſeth a Beaſt to pill and looſe the hair from his Neck, and is bred by drawing in wet and rainy weather, you ſhall take the aſhes of an old burnt ſhoo, and ſtrew it upon the Neck, and then rub it over with Tallow and Turpentine mixt together.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Peſtilence, Gargil or Murrain in Beaſts.

THis Peſtilence or Murrain amongſt Beaſts is bred by divers occaſions; as from rankneſs of blood, or feeding, from corruption of the air, intemperateneſs of the weather, inundation of floods, or the infection of other Cattel; much might be ſaid of the violence and mortality thereof, which hath utterly unfurniſhed whole Countries. But to go to cure, *you ſhall give to all your Cattel, as well the ſound as ſick, this Medicine which never failed to preſerve as many as have taken it*: take of old Urine a quart, and mixe it with a handful of Hens dung diſſolved therein, and let your Beaſt drink it. The Cure.

CHAP

CHAP. IX.

Of the misliking or leanness of Beasts.

IF your Beast fall into any unnaturall miss-like or leanness which you shall know by the discolouring of his Hair; you shall then cause him first to be let blood, and after take sweet Butter and beat it in a Mortar, with a little *Mirrh*, and the shaving of *Ivory*, and being kept fasting, make him swallow down two or three Balls thereof; and if it be in the Winter, feed him with sweet Hay; if in the Summer, put him to grass.

CHAP. X.

Of the disease in the Guts, as Flux, Costiveness, Cholick, and such like.

IF your Beast be troubled with any sore laxe or bloody-Flux, you shall take a handful of the seeds of *Wood-rose*, and being dryed and beaten to powder, brew it with a quart of strong Ale and give it the Beast to drink. But if he be too dry or costive in his body, then you shall take a handful of *Fœnugreek*, and boyl it in a quart of Ale, and give him to drink; but for any cholick or belly-ake or gnawing of the Guts, boyl in the water which he drinketh good store of Oyl, and it will help him.

CHAP. XI.

Of pissing of Blood.

IF your Beast pis blood, which cometh either of over-labouring or of hard and sower feeding, you shall take *Shepherds-purse*, and boyl it in a quart of red Wine, and then strain it, and put to it a little *Cinnamon*, and so give it the Beast to drink.

CHAP. XII.

Of dropping nostrils, or cold in the Head.

IF your Beasts nostrils run continually, which is a sign of cold in the Head, you shall take *Butter* and *Brimstone* and mixing them together, anoint two Goose-feathers therewith, and thrust them up into the nostrils of the Beast, and use thus to do every morning till they leave dropping.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of any swelling in a Beast whatsoever.

IF your Beast have any outward swelling, Bath it with Oyl and Vinegar exceeding hot, and it will asswage it: but if the swelling be inward, then boyl round *Aristolochia* in his water.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Worm in the Tayle.

THere is a Worm which will breed in the tayl of a Beast, and doth not only keep him from feeding, but also eateth away the hair of the tayl and disfigureth the Beast. The cure is, to wash the tayl in strong *Lye* made of *Urine* and *Ash-woodashes* and that will kill the Worm, and also heal and dry up the sore. The Cure.

CHAP. XV.

Of any Cough or shortness of breath in Cattel.

IF your Beast be troubled with the Cough or shortness of breath you shall give him to drink divers mornings together a spoonfull or two of Tarr, dissolved in a quart of new milk, and a Head of Garlick clean pill'd and bruised.

CHAP. XVI.

Of any Imposthume, Bile or Botch in a Beast.

IF your Beast be troubled with any Imposthume, Bile or Botch, you shall take Lilly-roots and boyl them in milk till they be soft, so that you may make them like pap: then being very hot clap them to the sore, and then when it comes to be soft, open it with a hot iron, and let out the filth, then heal it up with Tarr, Turpentine and Oyl mixt together.

CHAP. XVII.

Of diseases in the Sinews, as weakness, stiffeness or sorenes.

IF you find by the unnimble going of your Beast, that his Sinews are weak, shrunk or tender: Take *Mallows* and *Chickweed* and boyl them in the Dregs of Ale or in Vinegar, and being

very hot, lay it to the offended member, and it will comfort the sinews.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the general Scal, particular Scab, Itch or Scurf in Cattel.

IF your Beast be troubled with some few Scabs here and there on his body, you shall rub them off, and anoint the place with black Sope and Tarr, mixt together, and it will heal them. But if the Scab be universal over the body, and the Scabs mixt with a dry Scurf, then you shall first let the Beast blood, after rub off the Scabs and Scurf till the Skin bleed, then wash it with old Urine and green Copperas together, and after the bathing is dry, anoynt the body with Bores grease and Brimstone mingled together.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the hide-bound, or dry Skin in Cattel.

THis greif cometh of over-much labour and evil keeping, and above all other Beasts your *Lincoln-shire* Oxen are subject unto it, the signs are a discoloured and hard Skin, with much leanness: the cure is, to let him blood, and to give him to drink a quart of good strong Ale brewed with *Mirrh*, and the powder of *Bay-berries*, or for want of Berries the Bay-tree leaves; and then keep him warm and feed him with Hay that is a little mow-burnt and only looketh red, but is not dusty or mouldy, for that will get him an appetite to drink, and drinking will loosen his Skin.

The Cure.

CHAP. XX.

Of the diseases in the Lungs, especially the Lung-grown.

THe Lungs of a Beast are much subject to sickness, as may appear by much panting, and shortness of breath, the signs being a continual coughing, but that which is before prescribed for the Cough will cure all these, only for a Beast which is Lung-grown, or hath his Lungs grown to his side, which cometh through some extreme drought taken in the Summer season, and is known by the Cough, hoarse or hollow coughing; you shall take a pint of *Tanners ooze*, and mix it with a pint of new milk, and

and one ounce of brown Sugar Candy, and give it the Beast to drink, this hath been found a present cure; or to give him a ball as big as a mans fist, of Tar and Butter mixt together, is a very certain cure.

CHAP. XXI.

Of biting with a Mad Dog, or any other venemous Beast.

IF your Beast be bitten with a mad Dog, or any other venemous Beast, you shall take *Plantane*, and beat it in a Mortar with *Bole-armenick*, *Sanguis Draconis*, Barley meal, and the whites of Egs, and plaister-wise lay it to the sore, renewing it once in fourteen hours.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the falling down of the Palate of a Beasts mouth.

LAbour and drought will make the Palate of a Beasts mouth to fall down, which you shall know by a certain hollow changing in his mouth when he would eat, also by his sighing and a desire to eat but cannot. The ordinary cure is, you shall cast the Beast, and with your hand thrust it up; then let him blood in the palate, and anoint it with Honey and Salt; and then put him to grass, for he may eat no dry meat. The Cure.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of any greif or pain in the hoof of a Beast, and of the Foule.

TAke *Mugwort*, and beat it in a Mortar with hard *Tallow*, and apply it to the hoof of the Beast, and it will take away any greif whatsoever. But if he be troubled with that disease, which is called the *Foule*, and cometh most commonly by treading in a mans ordure, it breedeth soreness & swelling between the cloyes: you shall for the cure cast the Beast, and with a Hay rope rub him so hard between the same, that you may make him bleed, then anoint the place with *Tarr*, *Turpentine* and *Kitchin-fee*, mixt together; and keep him out of the dirt, and he will soon be whole. The Cure.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of bruiſings in general, on what part of the body ſoever they be.

TAke *Brooklime* the leſs, and fry it with Tallow, and ſo hot lay it to the bruiſe, and it will either expel it, or elſe ripen it, break it, and heal it, as hath been often approved.

CHAP. XXV.

Of ſwallowing down Hens-dung, or any poyſonous thing.

IF your Beaſt have ſwallowed down Hens-dung, Horſe-leeches, or any other poyſonous thing, you ſhall take a pint of ſtrong Vinegar, and half ſo much Oyl: or ſweet Butter, and two ſpoonfulls of *London-treacle*; and mixing them together on the fire give it the Beaſt warm to drink, and it will cure him.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of killing Lice or Tickes.

BEaſts that are bred in Woods under dropping of Trees, or in barren and unwholeſome places are moſt ſubject to Lice, Tickes, and other Vermine. The cure whereof is to anoint their body with freſh Greaſe, Pepper, Staveſaker and Quickſilver, beaten together until the Quickſilver be ſlain.

The Cure.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Dewbolu, or general Gargil.

HOwſoever ſome of our *Engliſh* Writers are opinioned, this *Dewbolu* or general *Gargil*, is a poyſonous and violent ſwelling, beginning at the neather part of the *Dewlap*; and if it be not prevented, the ſwelling will aſcend upward to the Throat of the Beaſt, and then it is incurable: therefore for the preſervation of your Beaſt, as ſoon as you ſee the ſwelling appear, caſt the Beaſt and ſlit the ſwelled place of the *Dewlap*, at leaſt four inches in length; then take a handful or two of *Speare-graſs*, or *Knot-graſs* and thruſting it into the wound, ſtitch it up cloſe; then anoint it with *Butter* and *Salt*, and ſo let it rot and wear away of it ſelf: if you perceive that his body be ſwell'd, which is a ſign that the poyſon is diſperſed inwardly, then it ſhall be

good

good to give him a quart of *Ale* and *Rue* boyl'd together, and so to chafe him up down well, both before and after.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of loss of the Cud.

A Beast will many times through careleſneſs in chewing, loſe his Cud, and then mourn and leave to eat: The certain cure whereof is to take a little ſower *Leaven* and *Salt*, and beating it in a mortar with mans *Urine* and *Lome*, make a pretty big ball and force him to ſwallow it down, and it will recover his Cud. The Cure

CHAP. XXIX.

Of killing of all ſorts of Worms, either in the Oxe, Cow or Calfe.

THere is nothing killeth Worms in the bodies of Cattel ſooner then *Savin* chopt ſmall, and beaten with ſweet *Butter*, and ſo given in round balls, to the Beaſt; nor any thing maketh them void them ſo ſoon as ſweet *Wort* and a little black *Sope*, mixt together, and given the Beaſt to drink.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the vomiting of Blood.

THis diſeaſe cometh of the rankneſs of blood got in Fruitful Paſtures after hard keeping, inſomuch that you ſhall ſee the blood flow from their mouths. The cure is, firſt to let the Beaſt blood, and then give to drink *Bole-armenick* and *Ale* mixt together. The Cure.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Gout in Cattel.

IF your Beaſt be troubled with the Gout, which you ſhall know by the ſudden ſwelling of his joynts, and falling again, you ſhall take *Galingall*, and boyl it in the dregs of *Ale* and ſweet *Butter*, and Pultis-wiſe lay it to the offended member.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of Milting of a Beaſt.

MIlting is when a Beaſt will oft fall, and oft riſe, as he is at his labour, and cannot indure to ſtand any while together it proceeds from ſome ſtroke or bruiſe, either by cudgil or other blunt weapon: And the cure is, not to raiſe him ſuddenly, but to give him *Ale*, and ſome ſtone *Pitch* mixt very well together to drink.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of provoking a Beast to piss.

IF your Beast cannot piss, steep *Smallage*, or the roots of *Raddish* in a quart of *Ale* and give it him to drink, and it presently helpeth.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of over-flowing of the Gall in Beasts.

THe over-flowing of the Gall, is ever known by the yellowness of the Skin, and the eyes of the Beast: And the cure is, to give him a quart of Milk, Saffron and Turmerick mixt together, to drink after he hath been let blood, and so do three mornings together.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of a Beast that is goared, either with a Stake, or the horn of another Beast.

TAke *Turpentine* and *Oyl*, and heat them on the Coals, and then taint the wound therewith, and it will heal it.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of a Cow that is whethered.

THis disease is; when a Cow after her calving cannot cast her cleaning, and therefore to compel her to cast it, you shall take the juyce of *Betony*, *Mugwort* and *Mallowes*, of each three spoonfulls, and mix it with a quart of Ale, and give it the Beast to drink: and also give her to eat scorched Barley, and it will force her to avoid her burthen suddenly.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of drawing out stubs or Thorns.

TAke black Snails and black Sope, and beat them to a salve, and apply them to the sore, and it will draw the greif to be apparent.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of purging of Cattel.

THere is nothing doth purge a Beast so naturally, as the green weedy grass which groweth in Orchards under trees, nor any Medicine doth purge them better than *Tarr*, *Buter* and *Sugar-Candy* mixt together, and given in balls as big as an Hens Eg.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of being ſhrew-run or ſhrew-bitten.

A Shrew Mouſe, which is a Mouſe with ſhort uneven legs, and a long head like a Swines, is venemous, and if it bite a Beaſt, the ſore will ſwell and rankle, and put the Beaſt in danger: but if it only run over a Beaſt; it feebleth his hinder parts, and maketh him unable to go: The cure then for being ſhrew-bitten, is the ſame whith is formerly ſhewed for the biting of other venemous Beaſts: But if he be ſhrew-run, you ſhall only draw him under, or beat him with a bramble, which groweth at both ends in the Furrows of Corn lands.

CHAP. XL.

Of faintneſs in Labour.

IF your Beaſt in his Labour, and heat of the day chance to faint you ſhall looſe him, and drive him to the running ſtream to drink, and then give him two or three Oſpines full of parch'd Barley to eat, and he will labour freſh again.

CHAP. XLI.

Of breeding Milk in a Cow.

IF your Cow after your Calving cannot let down he Milk; you ſhall give her a quart of ſtrong Poſſet-Ale, mixed with *Anniſeeds* and *Coliander-ſeeds*, beaten to powder, to drink every morning, and it will not only make her Milk ſpring, but alſo increaſe it wonderfully.

CHAP. XLII.

Of Bones out of joynt or bones broken.

IF any Beaſt have a bone broken, or miſplaced, after you have ſet it right, and in his true place, you ſhall wrap a plaiſter about it made of *Burgundy-Pitch*, *Tallow* and *Linſeed-oyl*, and then ſplent it, and let it remain unbound 15 days, and it will do much good.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the Rot in Beaſts.

IF your Beaſt be ſubject to rottenneſs, which you may know by his leanneſs, miſlike, and continually ſcowring behind: you ſhall take *Bay-berries*, beaten to powder, Mirrh, Ivy-leaves, Elder-leaves and Feather-few, a good lump of dry Clay, and Bay-ſalt, mix theſe together in ſtrong Urine, and being warm, give the

the Beast half a pint thereof to drink, and it will knit and preserve them.

CHAP. XLIV.

Of the Pantas.

THe Pantas is a very faint disease, and maketh a Beast to sweat, shake, and pant much. The cure is, to give him Ale and Urine mixt together, a little soot and a little earning to drink two or three mornings before you labour him.

CHAP. XLV.

Of all manner of Wounds in Beasts.

TO cure any Wounds in Beasts, given by edge-tools, or otherwise, where the Skin is broke; take Hogs-grease, Tarr, Turpentine and Wax, of each a like quantity, and a quarter so much Verdigrease, and melt them altogether into one salve, and apply it to the wound, by spreading it upon a Cloath, and it will heal it without any rank or dead flesh.

The end of the Bull, Oxe, Cow and Calfe, &c.

Of Sheep.

CHAP. I.

Of Sheep in general, their use, choice, shape and preservation.

TO enter into any long discourse of praise or profit of sheep or to shew my reading by relation of the Sheep of other Countries, were frivolous; because I am to write much in a very little Paper, and I speak only to my Countrey-men, the *English*, who desire to learn & know their own profit. Know then that

that whosoever will stock himself with good sheep, must look into the nature of the soyle in which he liveth: For sheep according to the earth and air in which they live, do alter their nature and properties: The barren Sheep becoming good in good soiles, and the good Sheep barren in evil soils. If then you desire to have Sheep of a curious fine staple of Wool, from whence you may draw a thread as fine as silk, you shall see such in *Hereford shire*, about *Lempster* side, and other special parts of that County; in that part of *Worcestershire* joyning upon *Shropshire*, and many such like places: yet those Sheep are very little of bone, black faced, and bear a very little burthen. The sheep upon *Cotsal* hills are of better bone, shape, and burthen, but their staple is courser and deeper. The Sheep in that part of *Worcestershire*, which joyneth on *Warwickshire*, and many parts of *Warwickshire*, all *Leicestershire*, *Buckinghamshire*, and part of *Northamptonshire*; and that part of *Nottinghamshire* which is exempt from the Forrest of *Sherwood*, beareth a large boned sheep of the best shape, and deepest staple; chiefly if they be pasture sheep, yet is their wool courser than that of *Cotsal*: *Lincolnshire* especially in the salt Marshes, have the largest Sheep, but not the best Wool, for their legs and bellies are long and naked, and their staple is courser than any other: the Sheep in *Yorkshire*, and so Northward, are of a reasonable big bone, but of a staple rough and hairy, and the *Welsh* Sheep are of all the worst, for they are both little, and of worse staple; and indeed are praised only in the dish, for they are the sweetest Mutton.

If now, knowing the natures and properties of the Sheep of every Country, you go about to stock your ground, be sure to bring your Sheep from a worse soil to a better, and not from a better to a worse. The Lear, which is the earth on which a sheep lyeth, and giveth him his colour, is much to be respected: the red Lear is held the best; the duskish, inclining to a little redness is tolerable; but the white or dirty Lear is stark naught. In the choice therefore of your Sheep, chuse the biggest boned, with the best wool; the staple being soft, greasie, well curled and close together, so that a man shall have much ado to part it with his fingers. These sheep besides the bearing of the best burthen, are alwaies the best Butchers ware, and go soonest away in the Market.

Of the choice of sheep.

Of the Lear.

ket. Therefore, in the choice of sheep for your breed, have a principal respect to your Rams, for they ever mar or make a flock: let them as near as you can, have these properties or shapes. First, large of body in every general part, with a long body, and a large belly, his forehead would be broad, round, and well rising, a cheerful large eye, strait short nostrils, and a very small muzzel; by no means any horns, for the dodder sheep is the best breeder, and his Issue never dangereth the Dam in yeaning, as the horned sheep do: besides, those sheep which have no horns, are of such strength of head, that they have oft been seen to kill those sheep which have the largest horns, and best wrinkled: A sheep would have a large upright neck, somewhat bending like the neck of a horse, a very broad back, round buttocks, a thick tail, and short joynted legs, small, clean and nimble, his wool would be thick and deep, covering his belly all over; also his face, and even to his nostrils, and so downward to his very knees and hinder houghs. And thus according to the shape, properties and soil from whence you chuse your Rams, chuse the rest of the flock also.

The shape of a sheep.

The best time for your Ewes to bring forth their young ones is, if they be pasture sheep, about the latter end of *April*, and so until the beginning of *June*; but if they be field sheep, then from the beginning of *January* till the end of *March*, that their Lambs may be strong and able before *May* day, to follow their Dams over the rough Fallow-lands, and Water-furrows, which weak Lambs are not able to do: and although you yean thus early in the Winter, when there is no grass springing, and the sharpness of the weather also be dangerous, yet the husbandman must provide shelter and sweet fodder, and the shephard with great vigilance be stirred at all hours, to prevent evils, for the reasons before shewed, and though the Ewe at the first be scant of Milk, yet as the warm weather increaseth, and the grass beginneth to spring, so will her milk spring also.

When Ewes should bring forth.

Now for your Lambs: about *Michaelmas* you shall separate the male from the female; and having chosen out the worthiest, which you mean to keep for Rams, put them aside, and then gueld the rest, which every orderly Shephard can do sufficiently, for there is no danger in guelding young Lambs. The first year a male Lamb is called a weather hog, and a female Lamb

Ordering Lambs.

an

an Ewe hog: the second year the male is a Weather, and the female a Theafe, and then she may be put to the Ram: but if you let her go over that year also, then she is a double Theafe, and will both her self be the goodlier sheep, and also bring forth the goodlier Lamb; whence it comes, that the best sheep-masters, make more account of the double Theafe, than of any other breeder.

Needful observations.

You shall observe never to shear your Lambs till they be full hogs: you shall ever wash three daies before you shear: the best time of shearing is from *June* to *August*. Ewes are ever good breeders, from three years old till their mouths break. If you would have your Ewes bring forth male Lambs, note when the North wind bloweth, and driving your flock against the wind, let your Rams ride as they go, and this will make the Ewes to conceive male lambs: so likewise, if you would have female lambs, put your Rams to the Ewes when the wind bloweth out of the South.

Now for the general preservation of sheep, feed them as much as you can upon high grounds, which are dry and fruitful, the grass sweet, yet so short that it must be got with much labour but if you must force-perforce feed upon low and moist grounds which are infectious; you shall not bring your sheep from the fold (for I now speak to the honest English husbandman) until the Sun be risen, and that the beams begin to draw the dew from the earth, then having let them forth, drive them to their place of feed, and there with your dog chase them up and down till they be weary, and then let them either feed or take their rest, which they please. This chasing first, beateth away mill dews; and all other dews from the earth, as also those webs, kells, and flakes which lying on the earth, and a sheep licking them up, do breed rottenness: Also this chasing stirreth up that natural heat in a Sheep, which drinketh up, and wasteth the abundance of moisture, which else would turn to rottenness. Besides, a Sheep being thus chased and wearied, will fall to his food more deliberately, and not with such greediness, as otherwise he would, and also make choice of that meat which is best for his health. If a Shepherd once in a month, or alwaies when he hath occasion to handle his Sheep, rub their mouths with Bay-salt, it

is an excellent preſervation againſt all manner of ſickneſs, and very comfortable for a Sheep alſo, for a Sheep will very well live, and abate of his fleſh by rubbing his mouth once a day with Bay-ſalt only. Now, foraſmuch as notwithſtanding theſe principles, a Sheep falleth into many infirmities; hereafter followeth the ſeveral cures of all manner of diſeaſes.

CHAP. II.

The ſigns to know a ſound ſheep, and an unſound ſheep.

IF a Sheep be ſound and perfect, his eye will be bright and cheerful, the white pure without ſpot, and the ſtrings red, his gums alſo will be red, his teeth white and even, his skin on his brisket will be red, and ſo will each ſide betwixt his body and his ſhoulder where wool grows not, his skin in general will be looſe, his wool faſt, his breath long, and his feet not hot: but if he be unſound, then theſe ſigns will have contrary faces; his eyes will be heavy, pale, and ſpotted, his breaſt and gums white, his teeth yellow and foul, his wool when it is pulled will eaſily part from his body; and when he is dead open him, and you ſhall find his belly full of water, his fat yellow, his liver putrified, and his fleſh moiſt and watriſh.

CHAP. III.

Of ſickneſs in general, or the Feaver amongſt Sheep.

CHange of paſture is a great cure for ſick Sheep; yet if you find any more particularly troubled then the reſt, take *Puliol-Royal*, and ſtamping it, mix the juyce with water and vinegar the quantity of half a pint, and give it the Sheep with a horn, luke-warm; and by no means let the Sheep be much chafed: Alſo in theſe ſickneſſes the Shepherd muſt have a great care to note from whence the diſeaſe groweth: if it proceed from cold, then to drive his ſheep to ſhelter; if from heat, then to feed them in ſhady and cool places.

CHAP. IV.

Of the general Scab or Itch in Sheep.

THe general Scab or Itch in Sheep, is of all diſeaſes the moſt common among them; proceeding from rainy and wet weather, which falling upon their skins, if they happen to be chaft or heated after, they preſently break forth into the ſcabs, which you ſhall know by a white filthy ſcurfe ſticking upon their

their skins. And the moſt uſual medicince for the ſame, which all ſhepherds uſe, is to anoint the place with Tar and Greaſe, mixt together; but if upon the firſt appearance of the itch, you ſteep *Puliol-royal* in water, and waſh the skin therewith, it will preſerve them from running into the ſcab.

CHAP. V.

Of killing Maggots in Sheep.

IF a Sheep be troubled with Maggots you ſhall take *Gooſe-greaſe*, *Tar*, and *Brimſtone*, and mix them together on the fire; and then anoint the place therewith, and it will kill the Maggots.

CHAP. VI.

Of the red water.

THe red Water is a poiſonous diſeaſe in Sheep, offending the heart, and is indeed as the peſtilence amongſt other cattel, therefore when you find any of your Sheep infected therewith, you ſhall firſt let him blood in the foot between the claws; and alſo under the tail, and then lay to the ſore places *Rew* or *Wormwood* beaten with Bay-ſalt, and it helpeth.

CHAP. VII.

Of Lung-ſick, or any Cough or Cold.

IF your Sheep be troubled with any ſickneſs in his Lungs, which you ſhall know by his coughing and ſhortneſs of breath, you ſhall take *Fuſſilago* or *Coltsfoot* and *Lungwort*, and ſtamping them, ſtrain the juyce into a little hony and water, and give it the Sheep to drink.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Worm in the Claw of the Sheep, or any other part.

THis worm breedeth commonly before, between the claws of the foot, but whereſoever it breedeth it is known by the head, which is like a tuft of hair, and will ſtick forth in a bunch. The cure is to ſlit the foot, and draw out the worm without breaking it; and then anoint the place with Tar and Tallow mixt together, for Tar ſimply of it ſelf will draw too much. The Cure.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Wildfire in Sheep.

THis diſeaſe which is called the Wildfire, is a very infectious ſickneſs, and will indanger the whole flock, but howſoever incurable

incurable it is held, yet it is certain, that if you take *Chervile*, and ſtamping it with old *Ale*, make a ſalve thereof, and annoint the ſore therewith, it will kill the fire, and ſet the Sheep ſafe: and though ſome, for this diſeaſe, bury the firſt infected Sheep alive, with his heels upward, before the Sheep coat dore, yet this medicine hath been ever more effectual.

CHAP. X.

Of the diſeaſe of the Gall, as Choller, Jaundiſe, and ſuch like.

The Cure.

THeſe diſeaſes are known by the yellowneſs of the Sheeps skinne: and the cure is, to take *Plantane* and *Lettuce*, and ſtamping them together, mix their juice with vinegar, and give half a pint to a Sheep, to drink.

CHAP. XI.

Of the tough fleam, or ſtopping in Sheep.

IF your ſheep be ſtopt in the head, breſt, or weſtand, either with tough fleam, or other cold humours, which you ſhall know by the running of the noſtrils; then take the powder of *Puliol-royal*, and mixing it with clarified Hony, diſſolve it in warm water, the quantity of half a pint, and give it the Sheep to drink, and it will looſen the flegm.

CHAP. XII.

Of bones broken in ſheep, or bones out of joint.

IF your Sheep chance to break a leg, or have any other bone miſplaced, you ſhall after you have ſet it ſtraight and right again, firſt bathe it with oyle and wine, and then dipping a cloath in molten *Patchgreaſe*, roul it about, and ſplint it as occaſion ſhall ſerve, and ſo let it remain nine daies, and dreſs it again, and at the end of the next nine daies, the Sheep will be able to go.

CHAP. XIII.

Of any ſickneſs in Lambs.

IF your Lamb be ſick, you ſhall give it *Mares-milk*, or *Goats-milk*, or the own dams milk and Water to drink, and keep it very warm.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Sturdy, turning-evil, or more-found.

THese diseases proceed from rankness of blood, which offendeth the brain, and other inward parts. The cure then is to let the Sheep blood in the eye veins, temple veins, and through the nostrils, then to rub the places with young Nettles bruised. The Cure.

CHAP. XV.

Of diseases in the eyes, as the Haw, dimness, or any soreness.

IF your Sheep have any imperfection in his eyes, you shall drop the juyce of *Selandine* into them, and it is a present help.

CHAP. XVI.

Of water in a Sheeps belly.

IF a Sheep have water in his belly between the outward flesh and the rim, then you may safely adventure to let it forth by making a little hole through the flesh, and putting in a quill; but if it be between the rim and the bag, then it is incurable, for you may by no means cut the rim asunder: When the water is let forth, you shall stitch up the hole, and anoint it with Tar and Butter mixed together: This water if it remain in the body, will rot the sheep.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Tag'd or Belt in Sheep.

A Sheep is said to be Tag'd or Belt, when by a continual squirt running out of his ordure, he berayeth his tail, in such wise, that through the heat of the dung it scaldeth, and breedeth the scab therein. The cure is, with a pair of sheers to cut away the tags, and to lay the sore bare and raw, and then to throw earth dryed upon it, and after that Tar and Goose-grease mixt together. The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Pox in Sheep.

The Cure. THe Pox in Sheep are ſmall red pimples like purples riſing on the skin, and they are infectious. The cure is, to take *Roſemary*, and boil the leaves in vinegar, and bathe the ſores therewith, and it will heal them: change of paſture is good for this diſeaſe, and you ſhall alſo ſeparate the ſick from the ſound.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Wood-evil, or Cramp.

The Cure. THis diſeaſe is weakneſs or ſtraitning of the ſinews got by colds and ſurfeits: it is very mortal, and will run through a whole flock. The cure is, to take *Cinkfoil*, or *Five-leaved-graſs*, and boil in wine, and give the Sheep a pint thereof to drink and keep him warm, and chafe his legs with oyl and vinegar.

CHAP. XX.

Of making an Ewe to love her own Lamb, or any other Ewes Lamb.

IF an Ewe grow unnatural, and will not take to her Lamb after ſhe hath yeaned it, you ſhall take a little of the clean of the Ewe, which is the bed in which the lamb lay, and force the Ewe to eat it, or at leaſt chew it in her mouth, and ſhe will fall to love it naturally: but if an Ewe have caſt her lamb, and you would have her take to another Ewes lamb, you ſhall take the lamb which is dead, and with it rub and daub the live lamb all over, and ſo put it to the Ewe; and ſhe will take as naturally to it, as if it were her own.

CHAP. XXI.

Of licking up poiſon.

The Cure. IF a Sheep chance to lick up any poyſon, you ſhall perceive it by a ſudden ſwelling and reeling of the Sheep. And the cure is, as ſoon as you ſee it ſtagger, to open the mouth, and you ſhall finde one or more bliſters upon the tongue roots, you ſhall preſently break them with your fingers, and rub them with earth or ſage, and then piſs into the ſheeps mouth, and it will do well.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Lambs yeaned sick.

IF a Lamb be yeaned sick and weak, the Shepheard shall fold it up in his cloak, blow into the mouth of it, and then drawing the Dams dugs, squirt milk into the mouth of it.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of making an Ewe to be easily delivered.

IF an Ewe can hardly bring forth or yean her Lamb, you shall take *Balsamint* or *Horsemint*, and put either the juyce or powder of it into a little strong ale, and give it the Ewe to drink, and she wil yean presently.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of teeth loose.

IF a Sheeps teeth be loose, let him blood in his gums, and under his tayl, and then rub his teeth with Earth, Salt and Sage.

CHAP. XXV.

Of increasing Milk in Ews.

NOthing encreaseth Milk in Ewes more than change of pasture and feeding: driving them one while unto the hills, another while to the Valleys; and where the grass is sweetest and short, and the sheep eateth with best appetite, there see you continue longest: for touching, giving them *Fitches*, *Dill*, *Anniseeds*, and such like, this change of ground will make Milk spring much better.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the staggers, or leaf sickness in Lambs, or elder Sheep.

THe Staggers is ingendered in sheep by surfeiting on Oak-leaves, hawthorn leaves, or such like, which Lambs are very apt unto: it is cold corrupt blood, or flegm, gathered together about the brain: indeed it is suddenly mortal. The best cure is, to take *Assafetida*, dissolved in warm water, and put the quantity of half a spoonful into each ear of the sheep or Lamb, and it is a present remedy. The Cure.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Worms in the guts of Sheep or Lambs.

SHeep are as subject to worms in their guts or stomachs as any other cattel whatsoever, which you shall know by beating

The Cure. ting their bellies with their feet, and by looking continually at their bellies. The cure is, to take the leaves of *Coliander*, and to ſtamp them, and then mixing the juyce thereof with hony, to give the Sheep to drink; and then chaſe him a little, and keep him two or three hours faſting.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the loſs of the Crud.

THat which helpeth the loſs of the Crud, in Ox or Cow the ſame is a preſent remedy for Sheep, and is ſpoke of before in a former chapter.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of ſaving Sheep from the Rot.

THis diſeaſe of Rottenneſs is the cruelleſt of all other amongſt Sheep, and extendeth his violence over all the flock: Nay, over Town-ſhips and Countries; and though it be held of moſt men incurable, yet good Government, and this Receipt I ſhall deliver you, will not only prevent it, but preſerve your Sheep ſafe: Therefore, as ſoon as you perceive that any of your Sheep are tainted, you ſhall take *Adraces*; which is a certain ſalt, gathered from the ſalt Marſhes, in the heat of Summer, when the tide is going away, and leaving certain drops of ſalt water on the Graſs, then the violent heat of the Sun turns it to ſalt; and to ſpeak briefly, all ſalt made by the violence of the Suns heat only, is taken for *Adraces*, of which there is infinite ſtore in Spain. With this *Adraces* rub the mouths of all your ſheep once a week, and you ſhall never need to fear the rotting of them, for it hath been well tried, and as I imagine, the experiment is found out from this very ground: It is a rule and well known at this day in *Lincolnſhire*, and in *Kent*, that upon the Salt Marſhes, ſheep did never dye of the rot: no other reaſon being known therefore; but the licking up of that ſalt, and without doubt, it is moſt infallible and moſt eaſie.

CHAP. XXX.

A few precepts for the Shepheard.

IT is meet that very good and careful Shepheards know what food is good for Sheep, what hurtful: that following the one and eſchewing the other, he may ever keep his cattel in good health.

health. The graſs that is moſt wholſome for Sheep, is that which hath growing in it good ſtore of *Melilot*, *Claver*, *Self-heal*, *Cinquefoil*, *Broome*, *Pimpernel*, and white *Henbane*.

The graſs which is unwholſome for Sheep, is that which hath growing amongſt it, *Spare wort*, *Penny wort*, or *Penny graſs*, and any weeds which grow from inundation or over-flows of water; likewiſe, *Knot-graſs* is not good, nor mildewed graſs. Of all Rots, the hunger Rot is the worſt, for it both putrifieth the fleſh and skin, and this moſt incident to field Sheep, for to paſture Sheep it never hapneth. The next Rot to it is the pelt Rot, which commeth by great ſtore of Rain, immediately after a Sheep is new ſhorn, which, mildewing the skin, corrupteth the body; and this alſo is moſt incident to field Sheep, which want ſhelter.

There be little white Snails which a Sheep will lick up, and they will ſoon rot him.

There will grow upon Ewes teats little dry ſcabs, which will ſtop their milk, when the Lambs ſuck; the Shepheard muſt have a care to pull them away.

A Sheep will have a bladder of water under his chin ſometimes which the Shepheard muſt be careful to let out and lance, or the Sheep will not proſper.

It is not good to ſhear Sheep before Midſummer, for the more hee ſweateth in his Wool, the better and more kindly it is.

If you will know the age of your Sheep, look in his mouth; and when he is one ſhear, he will have two broad teeth afore: When hee is two ſhear, he will have four broad teeth afore: when he is three, hee will have ſix; and when he is four ſhear, he will have eight: and after thoſe years his mouth will begin to break: For touching that Rule of the evenneſs and unevenneſs of the mouth, it is uncertain, and faileth upon many occaſions.

The end of the Sheep.

Of Goats.

CHAP. I.

Of Goats and of their Natures.

SEeing Goats are not of any general use in our Kingdome, but only nourished in some wild and barren places, where cattle of better profit can hardly be maintained, as in the mountainous parts of *Wales*, in the barrennest parts of *Cornwal* and *Devonshire*, on *Malborn* hills, and some few about the *Peak*; I will not stand upon any large discourse, but as briefly as I can, give you the natures and cures. You shall then know, that the Goat is a beast of a hot, strong, and lusty constitution; especially in the act of generation; that they exceed all other cattle; delight to live in mountains that be high, craggy, and full of bushes, bryars, and other wood, they will feed in any plain pastures, but their special delight is in brousing upon Trees, they are so nimble of foot that they will go in places of greatest danger. The profit which comes from them is their milk, which is an excellent restorative, and their Kids which are an excellent Venison. They are in other countries, as in *Spain*, the Islands of *Azores*, and the Islands of the *Canaries*, preserved for the chase and for hunting as we preserve our Dear both Red and Fallow, and make excellent pastime.

The Nature of Goats.

His shape.

For the shape of the Goat: he would have a large body, and well haired, great legs, upright joints, not bending, neck plain and short, a head small and slender, large horns, and bending, a big eye, and a long beard, and his colour white, black, or pide. Some do use to shear them, to make rough mantles of: but it is not so with us in *England*. The she Goat would have large teats and a big udder, hanging ears, and no horns, as they have in many places.

The ordering of Goats.

These Goats would be kept in small flocks, or herds, as not above

above a hundred in a herd: As they muſt in the heat of Summer have much ſhade, ſo in the Winter likewiſe much ſhelter: for they can neither endure extremity of heat nor cold, eſpecially, the violence of winter, for that will make the ſhe Goat caſt her Kid, or bring it forth untimely. Theſe love Maſt well, but yet you muſt give them other food to mix with it. The beſt time to let the Male and Female go together, is about the beginning of *December*. If you houſe your Goats in the winter, let them have no Litter to lye on, but the floor paved, or gravelled, for otherwiſe their own heat will annoy them: they muſt alſo be kept very cleanly, for they can indure no filthy ſavours. For the young Kids, you ſhall in all parts order them as you do your Lambs.

Now for their preſervation, if they be ſuffered to go and chuſe their own food, they are to themſelves ſo good Phyſicians, that they will ſeldome or never be troubled with any inward ſickneſs; only the unnatural exceſs of their luſt maketh them grow ſoon old, and ſo both paſt uſe and profit. For thoſe particular diſeaſes which accidentally fall upon them: here followeth the cures.

CHAP. II.

Of the Peſtilence in Goats, or any inward and hiddrn ſickneſs.

IF you perceive your Goats to droop, or look with ſullen or ſad countenances, it is an aſſured ſign of ſickneſs, but if they foam or Lather at the mouth, then it is a ſign of the Peſtilence. The cure is, firſt, to ſeparate them from the ſound, then to let them blood, and give them the Buds and Leaves of *Celandine*, with ruſhes and reeds to eat, and it is a preſent remedy. The Cure.

CHAP. III.

Of the Dropſie in Goats.

GOats are very much ſubject unto the Dropſie, through their exceſs of drinking water, the ſign whereof is a great inflammation and heat in the skin: the cure is, to ſeeth Wormwood in Water and Salt, and give a pint thereof to a Goat to drink divers mornings, for to ſlit and let out the water under the ſhoulder, is not ſo certain and ſafe a cure. The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of ſtopping the Teats.

The Cure. THere will ingender in the teats of Goats, a certain tough hard flegm, which will ſtop the milk from iſſuing: which to cure, you ſhall with your finger and your thumb pull it away, and then anoint the place with hony, and the Goats milk mixt together.

CHAP. V.

Of Goats that cannot Kid.

GOats above all other cattle, are troubled with hardneſs in Kidding, by reaſon that if they be chaſed or hunted their Kids will turn in their bellies: the remedy then to preſerve them from that danger, is to keep them quiet and untroubled, until they have Kidded.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Tetter, or dry Scab in Goats.

TO heal any Tetter, or dry ſcab in Goats, take *Black ſoape*, *Tar*, *Hogs-greaſe*, and *Brimſtone*, mix them well together and anoint the ſores therewith, and it will heal them.

CHAP. VII.

Of Gelding Kids in the Summer ſeaſon.

KIds being Gelt in the Summer ſeaſon, as thoſe which are late kidded muſt neceſſarily be: the flye will be ſo buſie with the ſore, that with their blowings they will breed ſuch ſtore of Maggots in the wound, that it will indanger their lives: to defend them then from ſuch annoyance of the flye, you ſhall take Soot, Tar, and thick Cream, and mix them well together, and anoint the wound therewith, and it will both heal and keep the flye away.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Itch in Goats.

IF your Goats be troubled with any Itch, ſo that they cannot feed for clawing or biting themſelves, you ſhall waſh their skins with old Chamber-lye, and green Copperas well boyled together, and it will kill the Itch.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Tuel ſtopping in Goats.

GOats, when they are ſucking on their dams, or when they are new Kidded, will commonly have a great lax or ſquirt, ſo that the ordure which cometh from them, if it be not well clenſed and taken from them, it will with their own natural heat ſo bake and dry, that it will ſtop up their Tuels, ſo that they cannot dung, which if it be not holpen, the Kid will dye. The cure is, to cleanſe the place, and open the Tuel, and then put into it an inch or thereabout of a ſmall Candles end dipt in hony, and then anoint all the Tuel over with Capons-greaſe. The Cure.

CHAP. X.

Of the Staggers, or reeling evil in Goats.

IF your Goats be troubled with the Staggers or Reeling evil, which is a diſeaſe bred in them by the violent heat of the Sun, you ſhall take *Bay-ſalt* and *Verjuce*, and mix them together, and give the Goat half a pint thereof to drink: or elſe take *Houſe leek*, and *Dragons*, of each alike: ſo grounds of *Ale* with a little new *Milk*: ſtamp the herbs, and then mingle them together, then put thereto a few *geves* groſly beaten, and then boil it again, then cool it, and give the ſick Goat three or four ſpoonfuls thereof to drink, and it will cure her. Now for any other infirmities which ſhall happen unto Goats, you may cure them with the ſame medicines which you cure ſheep, for their natures do not much differ.

The end of the Goat.

Of Swine.

CHAP. I.

Of all manner of Swine, their natures, uſe, ſhapes, and preſervations.

ALthough Swine are accounted troubleſome, noyſome, unruly, and greatly ravenous, as indeed their natures are not much diſſenting from ſuch qualities; yet the utility and profit of them, will eaſily wipe off thoſe offences; for

for to ſpeak truly of the Swine, he is the Husbandmans beſt Scavenger, and the Huswives moſt wholſome ſink; for his food and living is by that which will elſe rot in the yard, make it beaſtly, and breed no good manure, or being caſt down the ordinary ſink in the houſe breeds noyſome ſmells, corruption, and infection; for from the Husbandman he taketh pulſe, chaff, barn duſt, mans ordure, garbage, and the weeds of his yard: and from the huswife her draff, ſwillings, whey, waſhing of tubs, and ſuch like, with which he will live and keep a good ſtate of body, very ſufficiently; and though he is accounted good in no place but the diſh only, yet there he is ſo lovely and ſo wholſome, that all other faults may be born with, he is by nature greedy, given much to root up grounds and tear down fences, he is very lecherous and in that act tedious and bruitiſh: he is ſubject to much anger, and the fight of the Boars are exceeding mortal: they can by no means indure ſtorms, winds, or foul weather, they are excellent obſervers of their own homes: and exceeding great lovers one of another: ſo that they will dye upon any beaſt that offendeth their fellows.

Of the choice and ſhape of Swine.

Now touching the choice of Swine, you ſhall underſtand that no Country in England breedeth naturally better Swine one than another: but if any have preheminence, then I muſt prefer *Leiceſterſhire*, and ſome parts of *Northamptonſhire*, and clay countries bordering on *Leiceſterſhire*; and the reaſon I take to be, their great multiplicity of grain, eſpecially beans and pulſe. For the Maſt countreys, though they are good feeders they are no large breeders, whence it comes that your wild ſwine is ever your leaſt ſwine, but your ſweeteſt Bacon. But if the Race and keeping be alike, the proportion and goodneſs will be alike; therefore in the choice of your Swine, chiefly the Boars and Sows which you breed of, let them be long and large of body, deep ſided, and deep bellied, thick thighs, and ſhort legs, for though the long-legged ſwine appear a goodly beaſt, yet he but couſeneth the eye and is not ſo profitable to the Butcher, high claws, thick neck, a ſhort and ſtrong groin, and a good thick chine well ſet with ſtrong briſtles: the colour is beſt which is all of one peece, as all white, or all ſanded; the pide are the worſt and moſt apt to take meazels; the black is tolerable, but our Kingdome through the coldneſs breedeth them ſeldome.

The

The use and profit of Swine is only (as the Husbandman saith) for the roof, which is bacon; for the spit, which is pork, sowse and pudding; and for breed, which is their pigs only. To have too many Sowes in a yard is not good; for their encrease and bringing forth is so great, that they will for want of food eat one another. A Sow will bring forth Pigs three times a year, namely, at the end of every ten weeks, and the number is great which they will bring forth: for I have known one Sowe have twenty Pigs at one litter; twelve, fourteen, and sixteen are very common; yet a Sow can bring up no more Pigs than she hath teats, therefore look how many she hath, and so many Pigs preserve of the best, the rest cast away or put to other Sowes which want, yet give suck. A Sow will bring Pigs from one year old, till she be seven years old. The Pigs which you rear, after you have chosen the best for Boars or Sowes to breed on, geld the rest both male and females: the males will make goodly hogs, which are excellent Bacon or Pork; and the females which are called splayd-guelts, will do the like, and breed a great deal more grease in their bodies, whence it comes, that the Husbandman esteems one splay'd-guelt before two hogs. Young shots which are Swine of three quarters, or but one year old, are the daintiest Pork. The use and profit of Swine.

Now for the preservation of Swine, it is contained in their government and food, and is all that belongeth to the office of the Swine-herd. The orderliest feeding of Swine is, (when you keep them, but in good state of body, and not seek to fat them) in the morning early when you unstie them, to give them draff, pulse, or other garbage, with swilling in their troughs, and when they have eaten it, to drive them to the field, where they may graze and root for their food: And of grounds the soft marish and moorish grounds are the best, where they may get the roots of Seedge, Reeds, Rushes, Knot-grass, and such like, which is wholsome for Swine, or the fallow or tythe-field, where they may root at pleasure, and by killing the weeds bring profit to the Earth, and at the fall of the leaf, it is good to drive them to hedges, where they may get Haws, Hips, Sloes, Crabs, or such fruit, which is also very wholesome: and the poor sort will gather their fruits, and keep them safe to feed their Swine with all the Winter. When evening cometh, you shall drive your Swine home, and

then filling their troughs with draff and ſwillings, let them fill their bellies, and then ſtie them up, ſo ſhall you keep them from doing other hurts and injuries. If once in a fortnight you mixe with your ſwillings ſome Radle or red Oaker, it will preſerve them wonderfully from meazels, and all inward infections: and thus much for the general diſcourſe of Swine; now I will proceed to their particular infirmities, and other buſineſſes.

CHAP. II.

Of the Feaver or any hidden ſickneſs in Swine.

THere is no Beaſt maketh his ſickneſs ſo apparent as the Swine; for when he findeth any grief or diſtemperature in his body, he preſently droopeth, forſakes his meat, and will not eat till he find in himſelf a perfect recovery: therefore when you ſhall ſo find him to forſake his meat, you ſhall firſt let him blood under his tayl, and under his ears; and if they bleed not freſhly enough, you ſhall beat them with a ſmall ſtick, and that will bring forth the blood; then wrap about the wounds the bark of a young Oſier, and then keep him warm, and give him to drink warm ſwillings, well mixt with barley meal, and red Oaker.

The Cure.

CHAP. III.

Of the Murren, Peſtilence, or Cather in Swine.

THeſe diſeaſes being all of one nature, are very much incident in Swine, and ſpring from many grounds, as from corruption in blood, ingendred by the eating of rotten fruit, or too much Butchers garbage, and many times by eating too rank graſs, wherein is much *Hemlock*: their particular ſigns are moyſt eyes, and their heads born on each ſide, but their general knowledge is their faſting and mortality. The Cure is, to give them in warm waſh, *Hens dung*, and boyl'd *Liverwort*, with a little *Red Oaker*.

The Cure.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Gall in Swine.

SWine will have an overflowing of the Gall, becauſe choler is much powerful in them, which you ſhall know by a ſwelling which will riſe under their jaws; and the Cure is, to ſtamp *Gallwort* or *Saffron*, and mix it with honey and water, and then ſtraining

The Cure.

ing it, give it the Swine to drink by a pint at a time.

CHAP. V.

Of the Meazels in Swine.

THis diſeaſe of all other is moſt common in Swine, and with eaſe helped; as thus: you ſhall take the oldeſt Urine you can get, and mix it with red Oaker till it be thick, and about the quantity of an Ale-quart, then mix it with a gallon of warm ſweet Whey, and give it the Swine to drink, after he hath been kept all night faſting.

CHAP. VI.

Of Impoſthumes in any part of a Swine.

SWine will have Impoſthumes in any part of their bodies, as under their throats, their ears, bellies, and oft upon their ſides. The Cure is, if they be ſoft, to lance them, and let out the matter, and then heal them with Tarre and Butter; but if they be not ſoft, then let the Swine bloud under the tongue, and rub all his mouth, chaps and groin, with Wheat-meal and ſalt, and the Impoſthume will go away.

CHAP. VII.

Of Vomiting in Swine.

IF your Swine do vomit and caſt up his meat, you ſhall give him ſpelted Beans to eat, and they will ſtrengthen his ſtomach.

CHAP. VIII.

Of leanneſs, miſlike, ſcurf and mangineſs in Swine.

THeſe diſeaſes proceed from corruption of blood, ingendred by lying wet in their ſties, having filthy rotten litter, or much ſcarcity of meat. The Cure is, firſt to let the Swine blood under the tail, then to take a Wool-card, and to comb off all the ſcurfe and filth from the Swines-back, even till his skin bleed: Then take *Tarre*, *Hogs-greaſe* and *Brimſtone*, and mixing them well together, anoint the Swine therewith, then let the ſtye be mended, his litter be ſweet, and give him good warm food, and the Swine will be fat and ſound very ſuddenly. The Cure.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Sleeping Evil in Swine.

SWine are much subject to this disease in the Summer time, and you shall know it by their continual sleeping, and neglecting to eat their meat: The cure is, to house them up, and keep them fasting twenty four hours, then in the morning when hunger pincheth them, to give them to drink water, in which is stampt good store of *Stonecrop*, which as soon as they have drunk, they will vomit and cast, and that is a present remedy.

The Cure.

CHAP. X.

Of pain in the Milt.

SWine are oft troubled with pain in their Milts, or Spleens, which proceedeth from the eating of Mast, when they are first put thereunto, through their over-greedy eating thereof, and is known by a Reeling, going of one side. The cure is, to give them the juyce of Wormwood in a little honied water, to drink, and it will asswage the pain.

The Cure.

CHAP. XI.

Of the unnaturalness of Sowes.

MAny Sows do prove so unnatural, that they will devour their Pigs when they have farrow'd them; which springeth from an unnatural greediness in them; which to help, you must watch her when she farroweth, and take away the Pigs as they fall, then take the wreckling, or worst pig, and anoint it all over with the juyce of *Stonecrop*, and so give it the Sow again: and if she devour it, it will make her cast and vomit so extreamly, that the pain of her Surfeit will make her loath to do the like again. But of all Cures, the best for such an unnatural Beast, is to feed her well, and then kill her.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Laxe or Fluxe in Hogs.

FOr the Laxe or Fluxe in Swine, you shall give them Verjuyce and milk mixt together to drink, and then feed them with food, as spelted Beans, Acorns, or Acorn-husks. This is also excellent, and approved for young Pigs and Shots, when they have any scouring.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the lugging of Swine with Dogs.

IF your Swine be extreamly lugged and bitten with dogs, to prevent the rankling, and impoſthumation of the ſore, you ſhall anoint it with vinegar, ſope, and tallow mixt together, and it will cure the ſame.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Pox in Swine.

THe Pox is a filthy and infectious diſeaſe in Swine, proceeding from corrupt blood, ingendered by poverty, wet lying, lowſineſs, and ſuch like, and the Swine can never proſper which hath them. The Cure is, to give him firſt to drink two ſpoonfuls of *London Treacle*, in a pint of *honied water*, which will expel the infection outwardly, then to anoint the ſores with *Brimſtone* and *Boars-greaſe* mixt together, and ſo ſeparate the ſick from the ſound. The Cure.

CHAP. XV.

Of killing Maggots in the Ears or other parts of Swine.

IF Maggots ſhall breed in the Ears of your Swine, which have been lugged with dogs for want of good looking unto, as often it happeneth: you ſhall take either the ſweeteſt wort you can get, or elſe honey, and anoint the ſores therewith, and the Maggots preſently will fall off and die.

CHAP. XVI.

Of feeding Swine exceeding fat, either for Bacon or for Lard.

DIvers men according to the nature of divers Countries, have divers wayes in feeding of their Swine, as thoſe which live near unto Woods and places where ſtore of Maſt is, turn their Swine unto the Maſt for ſix or eight weeks, and then having got fleſh and fatneſs on their backs do bring them home, and put them up in ſties, and then feed them for ten dayes or a fortnight after, with old dry peaſe, given them oft in the day, a little at once, with water as much as they will drink: for this will harden the fleſh and fat, ſo that it will not conſume when it comes to boyling; this manner of feeding is good, and not to be diſliked. The feeding of Swine in Wood Countries.

Now

The feeding of Swine in Champion Countries.

Now the feeding of Swine in Champion Countries, which are far from Woods, is in this manner: First, you ſhall ſtie up thoſe Swine which you intend to feed, and let them not come out of the ſame untill they be fed, but have their food and water brought unto them: Now the firſt two dayes you ſhall give them nothing; the third day you ſhall early in the morning give them a pretty quantity of dry peaſe or beans; at noon you ſhall give them as much more, at four of the clock as much more, and when you go to bed as much more, but all that day no water. The next day you ſhall feed them again at the ſame hours, and ſet water by them, that they may drink at their own pleaſure, and twice or thrice a week as your proviſion will ſerve you, it is good to fill their bellies with ſweet Whey, Butter-milk, or warm Waſh, but by no means ſcant the proportion of their Peaſe; and by thus doing you ſhall feed a Swine fat enough for the ſlaughter in four or five Weeks.

Of feeding at the Reek.

There be other Husband-men in Champion Countries, as in *Leiceſterſhire*, and ſuch like, that put their Swine to Peaſe Reeks, or Stacks, ſet in the field near unto water-furrowes or rundles, ſo that they may let the water into the ſtack yard, and then morning and evening cut a cutting of the Stack or Reek, and ſpread the reaps amongſt the Swine: This manner of feeding is beſt for ſmall Porkets, and will fat them very reaſonable in three weeks or a moneth. If you feed ſheep amongſt your Porks, it is very good, and daily by many practiſed; for by that means you ſhall not loſe any of your grain; for what your ſheep cannot gather up, your porkets will.

Of feeding of Swine in or about great Cities.

Now for ſuch as live in or near about great Cities or Towns, as *London*, *York*, or ſuch like, and have neither great ſtore of Maſt, nor great ſtore of grain; yet they have a manner of feeding as good, and ſomewhat more ſpeedier then any of the other, only the Bacon is not ſo ſweet or toothſome; and thus it is, They ſtie up their fatlings, as is before ſaid, and then take Chandlers grains, which is the dregs and offall of rendred Tallow, as hard skins, kels, and fleſhy lumps, which will not melt together with other courſe skins of the Tallow, Suet, or Kitchin fee, and mixing it in warm Maſh, give it the Swine to eat three or four times in the day, and it will ſuddenly puff him up with fatneſs, then beſtow

of

of every Swine a bushel of dry peaſe to harden his fleſh, and you may kill them at your pleaſure. The only danger of this food is, it will at firſt ſometimes make Swine ſcour; eſpecially young pigs if they eat it: but as ſoon as you perceive ſuch a fault, give unto your elder Swine milk and verjuyce, and to your ſucking pigs verjuyce only.

Now laſtly, the beſt feeding of a Swine for lard, or a Boar for brawn, is to feed them the firſt week with Barley ſodden till it break, and ſod in ſuch quantity that it may ever be given ſweet; then after to feed them with raw malt from the floor, before it be dryed, till they be fat enough: and then for a week after, to give them dry peaſe or beans to harden their fleſh. Let their drink be the waſhing of Hogſheads, and Ale-barrels, of ſweet Whey, and let them have ſtore thereof. This manner of feeding breeds the whiteſt, fatteſt, and beſt fleſh that may be, as hath been approved by the beſt husbands. Of feeding of Hogs for lard, or Boars for brawn.

The end of the Swine of all ſorts.

Of Conies.

CHAP. I.

Of the tame rich Coney, his nature, choice, profit, and preſervation.

ALL ſorts of Conies may as well be kept tame as wild, and do above other Beaſts delight in impriſonment and ſolitarineſs, which proceedeth from the ſtrength of melancholy in their nature, being creatures ſo much participating of the earth, that their delight is to live in holes, rocks, & other dark Caverns. They are violently hot in the act of generation, and perform it with ſuch vigor and exceſs, that they ſwoon and lye in trances a good The nature of the Coney.

good ſpace after the deed is done. The males are given to much cruelty, and would kill the young rabbets if he could come to them: whence it proceedeth, that the females after they have kindled, hide their young ones, and cloſe up the holes, ſo that the buck-cony may not find them. The female or Doe conies are wonderfull in their increaſe, and bring forth young ones every moneth: therefore when you keep them tame in boxes, you muſt obſerve to watch them, and as ſoon as they have kindled, to put them to the Buck, or otherwiſe they will mourn, and hardly bring up their young ones.

Of Boxes for tame Conies.

The Boxes in which you ſhall keep your tame Conies, would be made of thin Wainſcot boards, ſome two foot ſquare, and one foot high; and that ſquare muſt be divided into two rooms, a greater room with open Windowes of wire, through which the Coney may feed; and a leſſer room without light, in which the Coney may lodge and kindle, and before them both a trough in which you may put meat, and other neceſſaries for the Coney, and thus you may make box upon box in divers ſtories, keeping your Bucks by themſelves, and your Does by themſelves, except it be ſuch Does as have not bred, and then you may let a Buck lodge with them; alſo when your Doe hath kindled one neſt, and then kindleth another, you ſhall take the firſt from her and put them together in a ſeveral box, amongſt rabits of their own age, provided that the box be not peſtred, but that they have eaſe and liberty.

Of the choice of rich Conies.

Now for the choice of theſe tame rich Conies you ſhall not as in other cattel, look to their ſhape, but to their richneſs, only elect your Bucks, by the largeſt and goodlieſt Conies you can get: and for the richneſs of the skin, that is accounted the richeſt, which hath the equalleſt mixture of black and white hair together, yet the black rather ſhadowing the white, then white any thing at all over-maſtering the black, for a black skin with a few ſilver hairs is much richer than a white skin with a few black hairs: But as I ſaid before, to have them equally or indifferently mixt, is the beſt of all other: the Fur would be thick, deep, ſmooth and ſhining, and a black coat without ſilver hairs, though it be not reckoned a rich coat, yet it is to be preferred before a white, a pyed, a yellow, a dun, or gray.

Now

Now for the profit of these rich Conies, (for unless they did far away and many degrees exceed the profit of all other conies they were not worthy the charge which must be bestowed upon them) it is this; First, every one of the rich conies which are killed in season as from *Martilmas* untill after *Candlemas*, is worth any five other Conies, for they are of body much fatter and larger, and when another skin is worth two pence or three pence at the most, they are worth two shillings, or two shillings and sixepence. Again, they encrease oftner, and bring forth more Rabbets at one kindling then any wild Cony doth: they are ever ready at hand for the dish, Winter and Summer, without charge of Nets, Ferrets, or other Engines, and give their bodies gratis, for their skins will ever pay their Masters charge with a most large interest.

Of the feeding and preservation of Conies.

Now for the feeding and preservation of these rich Conies, it is nothing so costly or troublesome as many have imagined, and as some ignorant in the skill of keeping them, have made the World think: for the best food you can feed a Cony with, is the the sweetest, shortest, softest, and best hay you can get, of which one load will serve two hundred couples a year, and out of the stock of two hundred, you may spend in your house two hundred, and sell in the market two hundred more, yet maintain the stock good, to answer every ordinary casualty. This hay in little cloven sticks might with ease reach it and pull it out of the same, yet so as they may not scatter nor waste any. In the Troughs under their boxes, you shall put sweet Oats and their water, and this should be their ordinary and constant food wherewith you shall feed your Conies, for all other should be used but Physically, as for the preservation of their health: as thus you shall do twice or thrice in a fortnight for the cooling of their bodies, give them Greens, as Mallows, Claver-grass, Sower-docks, blades of Corn, Cabbage or Colwort leaves, and such like, all which cooleth and nourisheth exceedingly: some use to give them sometimes sweet grains, but that must be used seldom, for nothing sooner rotteth a Cony.

You must also have great care that when you cut any grasse for them that are weeds, that there grow no young Hemlock amongst it, for though they will eat it with great greedinesse, yet it

is a preſent poyſon, and kills ſuddainly, you muſt alſo have an eſpecial care every day to make their boxes ſweet and clean, for the ſtrong ſavour of their ordure and piſs is ſo violent, that it will both annoy themſelves, and thoſe which ſhall be frequent amongſt them.

Of the Rot in Conies.

Now for the infirmities which are incident unto them, they are but two: The firſt is rottenneſs, which cometh by giving them too much green meat, or gathering their greens and giving it them with the dew on: therefore let them have it but ſeldome, and then the dryneſs of the Hay will ever drink up the moyſture, knit them and keep them ſound without danger.

Of madneſs in Conies.

The next is a certain rage of madneſs, ingendred by corrupt bloud, ſpringing from the rankneſs of their keeping; and you ſhall know it by their wallowing and tumbling with their heels upward, and leaping in their boxes. The Cure is, to give them *Harethiſtle* to eat, and it will heal them. And thus much of the tame rich Coney, and his properties.

The end of the Four-footed Beaſts.

The Second Book.

Of Poultrey.

CHAP. I.

Containing the ordering, fatting, cramming, and curing of all infirmities of Poultry, as Cocks, Hens, Chickens, Capons, Geeſe, Turkies, Pheaſants, Partridges, Quails, Houſe-dowes, and all ſorts of Fowl whatſoever. And firſt of the Dunghill Cock, Hen, Chicken, and Capon.

SOme ſmall thing hath been written of this nature before, but ſo drawn from the Opinions of old Writers, as *Italians*, *French*, *Dutch*, and ſuch like, that it hath no coherence or congruity with the practice and experience of Engliſh Cuſtoms, both

both their Rules and Climes being so different from ours, that except we were to live in their Countries, the Rules which are printed are useless, and to no purpose. To let pass then the opinion of strangers, and come to our own home-bred knowledg which is so mixed with all profitable experiments, that it needeth not the help of other Nations so much, as men would make us believe.

Of the Choice and shape of the Cock.

You shall understand that the Dunghill Cock (for the fighting Cock deserveth a much larger and particular discourse) is a foul of all other birds the most manliest, stately, and majestical, very tame and familiar with the man, and naturally inclined to live and prosper in habitable Houses: he is hot and strong in the act of generation, and will serve ten Hens sufficiently: and some twelve and thirteen: he delighteth in open and liberal plains, where he may lead forth his Hens into green pastures and under hedges, where they may warm and bath themselves in the Sun; for to be pent up in walled places, or in paved Courts, is most unnatural unto them, neither will they prosper therein.

Now of the choyce and shape of the Dunghill Cock, he would be of large and well sized body, long from the head to the Rump, and thick in the garth; his neck would be long, loose, and curiously bending it and his body together, being straight and high up erected, as the Faulcon and other birds of prey are; his comb, wattles and throat would be large, of great compass, ragged, and very Scarlet red, his eyes round and great, the colour answering the colour of his plume or male, as gray with gray, red with red, or yellow with yellow, his bill will be crooked, sharp and strongly set on to his head, the colour being suitable with the colour of feathers on his head, his main or neck feathers would be very long, bright, and shining, covering from his head to his shoulders, his legs straight and of a strong beam, with large long spurs, sharp and a little bending, and the colour black, yellow or brownish, his claws short, strong, and well wrinkled, his tayl long, and covering his body very closely, and for the general colour of the Dunghill Cock it would be red, for that is medicinal, and oft-used in cullifs and restoratives. This Cock should be valiant within his own walk, and if he be a little Knavish, he is so much the better; he would be oft crowing and busie in scatching the earth to find out Worms and other food for his Hens.

Of the Hen her choyce and ſhape.

Now for the Hen, if ſhe be a good one, ſhe ſhould not differ much from the nature of the Cock, but be valiant, vigilant and laborious both for her ſelf and her Chickens. In ſhape the biggeſt and largeſt are the beſt, every proportion anſwering thoſe before deſcribed of the Cock, only inſtead of her comb ſhe ſhould have upon her crown a high thick tuft of feathers: to have many and ſtrong claws is good, but to want hinder claws is better, for they oft break the egs, and ſuch Hens ſometimes prove unnatural, it is not good to chooſe a crowing Hen, for they are neither good breeders nor good layers. If you chooſe Hens to ſit, chooſe the elder, for they be conſtant, and will ſit out their times, and if you will chooſe Hens to lay, chooſe the youngeſt; for they are luſty and prone to the act of ingendring, but for neither purpoſe chooſe a fat Hen, for if you ſet her, ſhe will forſake her neſt, and if you keep her to lay, ſhe will lay her eggs without ſhells. Beſides, a fat Hen will waxe ſloathful, and neither delight in the one, nor in the other Act of Nature; ſuch Hens then are fitteſt for the diſh then the Hen-houſe.

Of Setting Hens.

The beſt time to ſet Hens to have the beſt, largeſt, and moſt kindly Chickens, is in *February*, in the increaſe of the Moon, ſo that ſhe may hatch or diſcloſe her Chickens in the increaſe of the next new Moon, being in *March*; for one brood of *March* Chickens is worth three broods of any other: you may ſet Hens from *March* till *October*, and have good Chickens, but not after by any means, for the Winter is a great enemy to their breeding. A Hen doth ſit twenty one dayes juſt, and then hatcheth, but Pea-hens, Turkies, Geeſe, Ducks, and other Water-foul ſit thirty: ſo that if you ſet your Hen as you may do upon any of their Egs, you muſt ſet her upon them nine dayes before you ſet her upon her own. A Hen will cover nineteen Eggs well, and that is the moſt in true rule, ſhe ſhould cover, but upon what number ſoever you ſet her, let it be odd, for the Eggs will lye round, cloſe, and in even proportion together; it is good when you lay your eggs firſt under your Hens, to mark the upper ſide of them, and then to watch the Hen, to ſee if ſhe buſie her ſelf to turn them from the one ſide to the other, which if you find ſhe doth not, then when ſhe riſeth from her eggs to feed or bath her ſelf, you muſt ſupply that office, and turn every egg it ſelf, and eſteem your hen

of

of so much the less reckoning for the use of breeding: be sure that the Eggs which you lay under her, be new and sound, which you may know by their heavinesse, fulnesse, and clearnesse, if you hold them up betwixt the Sun and your eye-sight; you must by no means at any time raise your Hen from her nest, for that will make her utterly forsake it.

Now for helping a Hen to hatch her eggs, or doing that which should be her office, it is unnecessary, and shall be much better to be forborn then any way used; or to make doubt of bringing forth, or to think the Hen sitteth too long, as many curious House-wifes do, if you be sure you set her upon sound Eggs, is as frivolous: but if you set her upon unsound Eggs, then blame your self both of the loss and injury done unto the Hen in her loss of labour. Choyce of Eggs.

A Hen will be a good sitter from the second year of her laying to the fifth, but hardly any longer; you shall observe ever when your Hen riseth from her nest, to have meat and water ready for her, lest straying too far to seek her food, she let her eggs cool too much, which is very hurtful. In her absence you shall stir up the straw of her nest, and make it soft and handsome, and lay the eggs in order as she left them: do not in the election of your Eggs choose those which are monstrous great, for they many time have two yelks; and though some write, That such Eggs will bring out two Chickens, yet they are deceived; for if they bring forth two, they are commonly most abortive and monstrous: to perfume the nest with brimstone is good, but with Rosemary much better. To set Hens in the Winter-time in Stows or Ovens is of no use with us in *England*, and though they may by that means bring forth, yet will the Chickens be never good nor profitable, but like the planting of Lemons and Pomegranate-trees, the fruits will come a great deal short of the charges. When your Hen at any time is absent from her nest, you must have great care to see that the Cock come not to sit upon the Eggs, (as he will offer to do) for he will indanger to break them, and make her love her Nest worse.

As soon as your Chickens be hatcht, if any be weaker then the other, you shall rap them in Wool, and let them have the ayr of the fire, and it will strengthen them: to perfume them with a little Of Chickens.

tle Rosemary is very wholsome also; and thus you may in a sieve keep the first hatcht Chickens till the rest be disclosed, (for Chickens would have no meat for two dayes) and some shells being harder than other, they will take so much distance of time in opening; yet unless the Chickens be weak, or the Hen rude, it is not amiss to let them alone under her, for she will nourish them most kindly: after two dayes is past, the first meat you give them should be very small Oatmeal, some dry, and some steept in milk, or else fine wheat bread crums, and after they have got strength, then Curds, Cheese-parings, white-bread crust soak'd in Milk or Drink, Barly meal, or Wheat bread scalded, or any such like soft meat that is small, and will easily be divided. It is good to keep Chickens one fortnight in the house, and after to suffer them to go abroad with the Hen to Worm, for that is very wholsome to chop green Chives amongst your Chickens meat, will preserve them from the Rye, and other diseases in the head; neither must you at any time let your chickens want water, for if they be forced to drink in puddle, it will breed the Pip: also to feed upon Tares, Darnel, or Cockel, is very dangerous for young chickens.

Of feeding and cramming Chickens.

You may by these foods aforesaid, feed chickens very fat under their dams: but if you will have fat crammed chickens, you shall coop them up when the Dam forsaketh them, and the best crams for them is wheat-meal and milk, made into dough, and then the crams steeped in milk, and so thrust down their throats: but in any case let the crams be small, and well wet for choaking; fourteen dayes will feed a Chicken sufficiently: And thus much briefly for your breed.

Of preserving Eggs.

Now because egs of themselves are a singular profit, you shall understand, that the best way to preserve or keep them long, is, as some think, to lay them in good straw, and cover them close, but that is too cold, and besides will make them musty: others will lay them in bran, but that is too hot, and will make them putrifie; and others will lay them in salt, but that makes them waste and diminish: the best way then to keep them most sweet, most sound, and most full, is only to keep them in a heap of old Malt, close and well covered all over.

Of gathering Eggs.

You shall gather your eggs up once a day, and leave in the nest but the nest-egg, and no more; and that would ever be in the after-

after-noon, when you have ſeen every Hen come from her neſt ſeverally: ſome Hens will by their cackling tell you when they have laid, but ſome will lay mute; therefore you muſt let your own eye be your inſtructor.

Now touching the Capon, which is the gueſt Cock-chicken, you ſhall underſtand, that the beſt time to carve or gueſd, is as ſoon as the Dam hath left them, if the ſtones be come down, or el e as ſoon as they begin to crow: for the art of carving it ſelf, it s both eaſie and common, and much ſooner to be learned by ſeeing one carved, then by any demonſtration in writing. Of the Capon when to carve him.

Theſe Capons are of two uſes: The one is to lead Chickens, Ducklings, young Turkies, Pea-hens, Pheſants and Partridges, which he will do altogether, both naturally and kindly; and through largeneſs of his body, will brood or cover eaſily thirty or five and thirty; he will lead them forth ſo ſafely, and defend them againſt Kites or Buzzards, more and better then the Hens: therefore the way to make him to take unto them is, with a fine ſmall briar, or elſe ſharp nettles at night, to beat and ſting all his breaſt and neather parts, and then in the dark to ſeat the Chickens under him, whoſe warmth taketh away his ſmart; he will fall much in love with them, and whenſoever he proveth unkind, you muſt ſting, or beat him again, and this will make him never forſake them. A Capon to lead Chickens.

The other uſe of Capons is, to feed for the diſh, as either at the Barn door, with craps of corn, and the chavings of pulſe, or elſe in pens in the houſe, by cramming them, which is the moſt dainty: the beſt way then to cram a Capon, (ſetting all ſtrange inventions apart) is to take Barley meal reaſonably ſifted, and mixing it with new milk, make it into a good ſtiff dough; then make it into long crams, biggeſt in the midſt, and ſmall at both ends, and then wetting them in luke-warm milk, give the Capon a full gorge thereof three times a day, morning, noon, and night, and he will in a fortnight or three weeks, be as fat as any man need to eat. Of feeding or cramming Capons.

As for mixing their crams with ſweet Wort, Hogs greaſe, or Sallet oyl, they are by experience found to breed loath in the Birds, and not to feed at all: only keep this obſervation, not to give your Capon new meat untill the firſt be put over. And if

you

you find your Capon ſomething hard of digeſtion, then you ſhall ſift your meal finer, for the finer your meal is, the ſooner it will paſs through their bodies. And thus much for the Capon. Now for their infirmities, they follow in order.

CHAP. II.

Of the Pip in the Poultry.

THe Pip is a white thin ſcale, growing on the tip of the tongue, and will make Poultry that they cannot feed: it is eaſie to be diſcerned, and proceedeth generally from drinking puddle water, from want of water, or from eating filthy meat. The Cure is to pull off the ſcale with your nayl, and then rub the tongue with ſalt.

The Cure.

CHAP. III.

Of the Roup in Poultry.

THe Roup is a filthy byle or ſwelling on the Rump of Poultry, and will corrupt the whole body. It is ordinarily known by the ſtaring and turning backward of the feathers: The Cure is, to pull away the feathers, and open the ſore, to thruſt out the core, and then waſh the place with ſalt and water, or with brine, and it helpeth.

The Cure.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Flux in Poultry.

THe Flux in Poultry cometh with eating too much moyſt meat. The Cure is, to give them peaſe bran ſcalded, and it will ſtay them.

The Cure.

CHAP. V.

Of ſtopping in the Belly.

STopping in the Bellies of Poultry, is contrary to the Flux, ſo that they cannot mute: therefore you ſhall anoint their Vents, and then give them either ſmall bits of bread, or Corn ſteept in mans Urine.

CHAP. VI.

Of Lice in Poultry.

IF your Poultry be much troubled with Lice, as it is a common infirmity

infirmity, proceeding from corrupt food or want of bathing in sand, ashes, or such like: you shall take Pepper small beaten, and mixing it with warm water, wash your Poultry therein, and it will kill all sorts of vermine.

CHAP. VII.

Of stinging with venemous Worms.

IF your Poultry be stung with any venemous thing, as you may perceive by their lowring, and swelling, you shall then anoint them with Rew and Butter mixt together, and it helpeth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of sore eyes in Poultry.

IF your Poultry have sore eyes, you shall take a leafe or two of ground-Ivy, and chawing it well in your mouth, suck out the juice, and spit into the sore eye, and it will most assuredly heal it, as it hath been often tried.

CHAP. IX.

Of Hens that crow.

IF your Hens crow, which is an ill sign and unnatural, you shall pull their wings, and give her to eat either Barley scorched, or small wheat, and keep her close from other Poultry.

CHAP. X.

Of Hens that eat their Eggs.

IF your Hen will eat her Eggs, you shall only lay for her nest-egg a piece of chalk cut like an egg, at which by pecking and losing her labour, she will refrain the evil.

CHAP. XI.

Of keeping a Hen from sitting.

IF you would not have your Hen sit, you shall bathe her oft in cold water, and thrust a small feather through her nostrils.

CHAP. XII.

Of making Hens lay soon and oft.

IF you feed your Hens often with toasts taken out of Ale, with Barley boild, or spelted fitches, they will lay soon, oft, and all the winter.

CHAP. XIII.

Of making Hens lean.

BEcauſe fat Hens commonly either lay their Eggs without ſhels, or at the beſt hand lay very ſmall eggs; to keep them lean and in good plight for laying, you ſhall mix both their meat and water with the powder of tile-ſheards, chalk or elſe tares, twice or thrice a week.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Crow-trodden.

IF your Hen be trodden with a carrion Crow, or Rook, as oft they are, it is mortal and incurable, and you ſhall know it by the ſtaring up of her feathers, and hanging of her wings, there is no way with her then, but preſently to kill her.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Hen-houſe, and ſituation.

NOw for as much as no Poultry can be kept either in health or ſafety abroad, but muſt of force be houſed, you ſhall underſtand that your Hen-houſe would be large and ſpacious, with ſomewhat a high roof, the walls ſtrong, both to keep out theeves and vermine, the windows upon the Sun-riſing, ſtrongly lathed, and cloſe ſhuts inward, round about the inſide of the walls; upon the ground would be built large pens of three foot high for Geeſe, Ducks, and great fowl to ſit in; near to the eavings of the houſe would be long Pearches, reaching from one ſide of the houſe to the other, on which ſhould ſit your Cocks, Hens, Capons, and Turkies, each on ſeveral Pearches, as they are diſpoſed: at another ſide of the houſe, in that part which is darkeſt over the ground-pens, would be fixed hampers full of ſtraw for neſts, in which your Hens ſhall lay their eggs, but when they ſit to bring forth chickens, then let them ſit on the ground, for otherwiſe it is dangerous: let there be pins ſtricken into the wall, ſo that your Poultry may clime to their Pearches with eaſe: let the floor by no means be paved, but of earth ſmooth and eaſie, let the ſmaller fowl have a hole at one end of the houſe, made to come in and out at, when they pleaſe, or elſe they will ſeek rooſt in other places; and for the greater Fowl the door may be opened evening and morning. This houſe ſhould be placed either

either near some Kitchin, Brew-house, or else some Kiln, where it may have air of the fire, and be perfumed with smoak, which to Pullen is delightful and wholsome. And thus much of the Cock, Hen, Capon, and Chicken.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Geese, their nature, choice, and how to breed them.

GEese, are a Fowl of great profit many waies, as first for food, next for their feathers, and lastly for their grease. They are held of Husbandmen to be fowl of two lives, because they live both on land and water; and therefore all men must understand that except he have either Ponds or Stream, he can never keep Geese well. They are so watchful and careful over themselves, that they will prevent most dangers: grass also they must necessarily have, and the worst, and that which is the most useless is the best, as that which is mooriſh, rotten, and unsavory, for cattel. To good grass they are a great enemy, for their dung and treading will putrifie it, and make it then barren.

Now for the choice of Geese, the largest is the best, and the colour would be white or gray, all of one pair, for pide are not so profitable, and black are worse: your Gander would be knaviſh and hardy, for hee will defend the Goslings the better. The choice of Geese.

Now for the laying of Eggs, a Goose beginneth to lay in the Spring, and she that layeth earliest is ever the best Goose, for she may have a second hatch. Geese will lay twelve, and some sixteen Eggs, some will lay more, but it is seldome, and they cannot be all well covered; you shall know when your Goose will lay, by her carrying straw up and down in her mouth, and scattering it abroad: and you shall know when she will sit, by her continuing on the nest till after she hath laid. You must set a Goose upon her own Eggs, for she will hardly or unkindly sit on another Goose Egs, as some imagine; but it is not ever certain: you shall in her straw when you set her, mix nettle roots, for it is good for the Goslings: thirty daies is the full time that a Goose sitteth, but if the weather be fair and warm, she will hatch three or four daies sooner; ever when the Goose riseth from the Nest, you Of laying eggs, and sitting.

The ordering of Goslings.

shall give her meat, as skegge Oats, and Bran scalded, and give her leave to bathe in the water. After she hath hatcht her Goslings, you shall keep them in the house ten or twelve daies, and feed them with Curds, scalded Chippings, or Barly meal in milk knodden and broken, also ground Malt is exceeding good, or any Bran that is scalded in water, milk, or tappings of drink. After they have got a little strength, you may let them go abroad with a Keeper five or six hours in a day, and let the dam at her leisure intice them in the water, then bring them in, and put them up, and thus order them, till they be able to defend themselves from vermine. After a Gosling is a month or six weeks old, you may put it up to feed for a green-Goose, and it will be perfectly fed in another month following: and to feed them, there is no meat better than skeg Oats boil'd, and given plenty thereof thrice a day, Morning, Noon, and Night, with good store of milk, or milk and water mixt together to drink.

Of green-geese and their fatting.

Of the Gander.

Now you shall understand one Gander will serve well five Geese, and to have not above forty Geese in a flock is best, for to have more is both hurtful and troublesome.

Fatting of elder Geese.

Now for the fatting of elder Geese, which are those which are five or six months old, you shall understand that after they have been in the stubble fields, and during the time of Harvest got into good flesh, you shall then chuse out such Geese as you would feed, and put them in several pens which are close and dark, and there feed them thrice a day with good store of Oats, or spelted Beans, and give them to drink water and Barley-meal mixt together, which must evermore stand before them, this will in three weeks feed a Goose so fat as is needful.

Of gathering Geese feathers.

Now lastly, for the gathering of a Gooses feathers, you shall understand, that howsoever some Writers advise you for a needless profit to pull your Geese twice a year, *March* and *August*: yet certainly it is very nought and ill; for first, by disabling the flight of the Goose, you make her subject to the cruelty of the Fox, and other ravenous beasts: and by uncloathing her in Winter you strike that cold into her body which kills her very suddenly: therefore it is best to stay till moulting time, or till you kill her, and then you may imploy all her feathers at your pleasure, either for beds, Fletchers, or Scriveners.

For

For the diſeaſes and infirmities in Geeſe, the moſt and worſt they are ſubject unto, is the *Gargil*, which is a mortal or deadly ſtopping of the head. And the ordinary and certain cure is, to take three or four cloves of Garlick, and beating them in a mortar with ſweet butter, make little long balls thereof, and give two or three of them to the Gooſe faſting, and then ſhut her up for two hours after. Of the Gargil in Geeſe. The Cure.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Turkies, their nature, uſe, increaſe and breeding.

TUrkies, howſoever by ſome Writers they are held devourers of Corn, ſtrayers abroad, ever pulling for meat, and many ſuch like fained troubles, as if they were utterly unprofitable, yet it's certain, they are moſt delicate, either in paſt, or from the ſpit, and being fat, far exceeding any other houſe-fowl whatſoever: nay, they are kept with more eaſe and leſs coſt, for they will take more pains for their food than any other Bird, only they are enemies to a Garden, and from thence muſt ever be kept. They when they are young are very tender to bring up, both becauſe they are of a ſtraying nature in themſelves, and the Dams are ſo negligent, that whilſt ſhe hath one following her, ſhe never reſpecteth the reſt: therefore they muſt have a vigilant keeper to attend them, till they can ſhift for themſelves, and then they will flock together, and ſeldome be parted. Till you fat them, you need not take care for food for them; they love to rooſt in trees or other high places.

Now for your choice of ſuch as you would breed on; your Turky Cock would not be above two years old at moſt, be ſure that he be loving to the Chickens; and for your Hen, ſhe will lay till ſhe be five year old, and upward. Your Turky Cock would be a Bird large, ſtout, proud and majeſtical, for when he walketh dejected, he is never good treader. Of the choice of the Turky Cock.

The Turky Hen, if ſhe be not prevented, will lay her egges in ſecret places, therefore you muſt watch her, and bring her to her Hen-houſe; and there compel her to lay. They begin to lay in March, and will ſit in April; and eleven Eggs, or thirteen, is the moſt they ſhould cover: they hatch ever between five and twenty and thirty dayes. When they have hatcht their broods be ſure Of the Turky Hen her ſitting

to

to keep the Chicks warm, for the leaſt cold kills them, and feed them either with Curds, or green freſh Cheeſe cut in ſmall pieces; let their drink be new milk, or milk and water: you muſt be careful to feed them oft; for the Turky-Hen will not like the Houſe-Hen, call her chickens to feed them. When your Chicks have got ſtrength, you ſhall feed them abroad in ſome cloſe walled Graſs-plat, where they cannot ſtray, or elſe ever be at charge of a Keeper. The dew is moſt hurtful unto them, therefore you muſt houſe them at night, and let them abroad after Sun riſe in the morning.

Of feeding Turkies.

Now for the fatting of Turkies, ſodden Barly is excellent, or ſodden Oats for the firſt fortnight, and then for another fortnight cram them in all ſorts, as you cram your Capon, and they will be fat beyond meaſure. Now for their infirmities, when they are at liberty, they are ſo good Phyſitians for themſelves, that they will never trouble their owners; but being coopt up, you muſt cure them as is before deſcribed for Pullen. Their Eggs are exceeding wholſome to eat, and reſtore nature decayed wonderfully.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Duck, and ſuch Water Fowls.

THe tame Duck is an exceeding neceſſary fowl for the Huſbandmans yard, for ſhe asketh no charge in keeping, but liveth of corn loſt or other things of leſs profit. She is once in a year a very great layer of Eggs; and when ſhe ſitteth ſhe craves both attendance and feeding; for being reſtrained from ſeeking her food, ſhe muſt be helped with a little barley or other overchaving of corn, ſuch as elſe you would give unto Swine: as for her ſitting, hatching, and feeding of her Ducklings it is in all points to be obſerved in ſuch manner as you did before with the Gooſe, only after they are abroad they will ſhift better for their food than Goſlings will. For the fatting of Ducks or Ducklings, you may do it in three weeks, by giving them any kind of Pulſe or Grain, and good ſtore of water.

Of wild-Duck, and their ordering.

If you will preſerve Wild-Ducks, you muſt wall in a little piece of ground, in which is ſome little pond or ſpring, and cover the top of it all over with a ſtrong net: the pond muſt be ſet with many tufts of Oziers, and have many ſecret holes, and creeks,

creeks, for that will make them delight and feed though impriſoned. The wild-duck when ſhe layeth, will ſteal from the Drake and hide her neſt, for he elſe will ſuck the Eggs. When ſhe hath hatcht ſhe is moſt careful to nouriſh them, and needeth no attendance more than meat, which would be given freſh, twice a day, as ſcalded Bran, Oats or Fitches. The houſe-hen will hatch wild-Ducks eggs, and the meat will be much the better, yet every time they go into the water, they are in danger of the Kite, becauſe the hen cannot guard them. In the ſame manner as you nouriſh wild-Ducks, ſo you may nouriſh Teals, Widgens, Shel-drakes or green Plovers.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Swans, and their feeding.

TO ſpeak of the breeding of Swans is needleſs, becauſe they can better order themſelves in that buſineſs, than any Man can direct them, only where they build their neſts, you ſhall ſuffer them to remain undiſturbed, and it will be ſufficient: but for the feeding them fat for the diſh; you ſhall feed your Cygnets in all ſorts as you feed your Geeſe, and they will be through fat in ſeven or eight weeks, either coopt in the houſe, or elſe walking abroad in ſome private court; but if you would have them fat in ſhorter ſpace, then you ſhall feed them in ſome pond, hedg'd or pal'd in for that purpoſe, having a little dry ground left, where they may ſit and prune themſelves, and you may place two troughs, one full of Barley and water, the other full of old dryed Malt, on which they may feed at their pleaſure; and thus doing they will be fat in leſs than four weeks: for by this means a Swan keepeth himſelf neat and clean, who being a much defiled Bird, liveth in dry places ſo uncleanly, that they cannot proſper, unleſs his attender be diligent to dreſs and trim his walk every hour.

CHAP. XX.

Of Peacocks, and Peahens, their increaſe, and ordering.

PEacocks, howſoever our old writers are pleaſed to deceive themſelves in their praiſes, are birds more to delight the eye by

by looking on them, than for a particular profit; the best commodity arising from them, being the clensing and keeping of the yard free from venemous things, as Toads, Newts, and such like, which is their daily food: whence it comes, that their flesh is very unwholsome, and used in great banquets, more for the rareness than the nourishment, for it is most certain, roast a Peacock or Peahen never so dry, then set it up, and look on it the next day, and it will be blood raw, as if it had not been roasted at all.

The Peahen loves to lay her eggs abroad in bushes and hedges, where the Cock may not find them, for if he do, he will break them; therefore as soon as she begins to lay, separate her from the Cock and house her till she have brought forth her young, and that the cronet of feathers begin to rise at their foreheads, and then turn them abroad, and the Cock will love them, but not before. A Peahen sits just thirty daies, and in her sitting, any grain, with water, is food good enough: before your Chickens go abroad, you shall feed them with fresh green Cheese, and Barly-meal, with water, but after they go abroad, the Dam will provide for them. The best time to set a Peahen is, at the beginning of the Moon, and if you set Hens eggs amongst her eggs, she will nourish both equally. The Pea-chickens are very tender, and the least cold doth kill them, therefore you must have a care to keep them warm, and not to let them go abroad but when the Sun shineth. Now for the feeding of them, it is a labour you may well save, for if they go in a place where there is any corn stirring, they will have part, and being meat which is seldome or never eaten, it mattereth not so much for their fatning.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the tame Pidgeon, or rough footed.

THe tame rough-footed Pidgeon differs not much from the wild Pidgeon, only they are somewhat bigger, and more familiar, apt to be tame; they commonly bring not forth above one pair of Pidgeons at a time, and those which are the lest of body are ever the best breeders, they must have their rooms and boxes made clean once a week; for they delight much in neat-

ness

neſs; and if the walls be outwardly whited or painted, they love it the better, for they delight much in fair buildings. They will bring forth their young ones once a month, if they be well fed, and after they be well pair'd they will never be divided. The Cock is a very loving and natural bird, both to his Hen and the young ones, and will ſit the Eggs while the Hen feedeth, as the Hen ſits whilſt he feedeth: he will alſo feed the young with as much painfulneſs as the Dam doth, and is beſt pleaſed when he is brooding them. Theſe kinde of Pidgeons you ſhall feed with white Peaſe, Tares, and good ſtore of clean water. In the room where they lodge you ſhall ever have a ſalt Cat for them to pick on, and that which is gathered from Salt-Peter is the beſt: alſo they would have good ſtore of dry Sand, Gravel, and Pibble, to bathe and cleanſe themſelves withall, and above all things great care taken, that no vermine, or other Birds come into their boxes, eſpecially Sterlings, and ſuch like, which are great Egg-ſuckers. And thus much of the tame Pidgeon.

CHAP. XXII.

Of nouriſhing and fatting, Hearns, Puets, Guls, and Bitterns.

HEarns are nouriſhed for two cauſes; either for Princes ſports to make trains for the entring their Hawks, or elſe to furniſh on the Table at great Feaſts: the manner of bringing them up with the leaſt charge, is to take them out of their neſts before they can flye, and put them into a large high Barn, where there is many high and croſs beams for them to pearch on: then to have on the floor divers ſquare boards with rings in them, and between every board which would be two yards ſquare, to lace round ſhallow tubs full of water; then to the boards you ſhall tye great gobbets of Dogs fleſh, cut from the bones, according to the number which you feed: and be ſure to keep the houſe ſweet, and ſhift the water oft, only the houſe muſt be made ſo that it may rain in now and then, in which the Hearn will take much delight. But if you feed her for the diſh, then you ſhall feed them with Livers, and the intrails of Beaſts, and ſuch like, cut in great gobbets; and this manner of feeding will alſo feed either Gull, Puet, or Bittern: but the Bittern is ever beſt to be fed by the hand, becauſe when you have fed him, you muſt tye his beak together; or he will caſt up his meat again.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of feeding the Patridge, Pheſant, and Quail.

THeſe three are the moſt daintieſt of all Birds, & for the Pheſant or Partridge, you may feed them both in one room where you may have little boxes where they may run and hide themſelves in divers corners of the room; then in the midſt you ſhall have three wheat ſheaves, two with their ears upward, and one with the ears downward, and near unto them ſhallow tubs with water, that the fowl may peck wheat out of the ears, and drink at their pleaſures, and by this manner of feeding, you ſhall have them as fat as is poſſible; as for your Quails, the beſt feeding them is in long flat ſhallow boxes, each box able to hold two or three dozen, the foremoſt ſide being ſet with round pins ſo thick that the Quailes do no more but put out her head, then before that open ſide, ſhall ſtand one trough full of ſmall chilter-wheat, another with water, and thus in one fortnight, or three weeks you ſhall have them exceeding fat.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of Godwits, Knots, Gray-plover, or Curlews.

FOr to feed any of theſe Fowls which are eſteemed of all other the daintieſt and deareſt, fine Chilter-wheat, and water given them thrice a day, Morning, Noon, and Night, will do it very effectually; but if you intend to have them extraordinary and crammed fowl, then you ſhall take the fineſt dreſt wheat-meal, and mixing it with Milk, make it into paſte, and ever as you knead it, ſprinkle into it the grains of ſmall Chilter wheat, till the paſte be fully mixt therewith; then make little ſmall crams thereof, and dipping them in water give to every fowl according to his bigneſs, and that his gorge be well filled: do thus as oft as you ſhall finde their gorges empty, and in one fortnight they will be fed beyond meaſure, and with theſe crams you may feed any fowl of what kind or nature ſoever.

CHAP. XXV.

Of feeding Black-birds, Thruſhes, Felfares, or any ſmall Birds whatſoever.

TO feed theſe Birds, being taken old & wild, it is good to have ſome of their kinds tame to mix among them, and then putting

ting them into great cages of three or four yards ſquare, to have divers troughs placed therein, ſome filled with Haws, ſome with Hempſeed, and ſome with water, that the tame teaching the wild to eat, and the wild finding ſuch change and alteration of food, they will in twelve or fourteen daies grow exceeding fat, and fit for the uſe of the Kitchin.

The end of the Poultry.

Of Hawks.

CHAP. I.

Of the general Cures for all Diſeaſes and Infirmities in Hawks, whether they be ſhort winged Hawks, or long winged Hawks, and firſt of Caſtings.

HAwks are divided into two kinds, that is to ſay, ſhort winged Hawks, as the Goſhawk and her Tercel, the Sparrow-hawk and her Musket, and ſuch like, whoſe wings are ſhorter than their trains, and do belong to the Oſtringer; and long winged Hawks, as the Faulcon gentle and her Tercel, the Gerfaulcon and Jerking, the Lanner, Merlin, Hobby and divers others. Now foraſmuch as their infirmities for the moſt part, proceed from the indiſcretion of their Governours, if they flye them out of ſeaſon before they be inſeamed, and have the fat, glut, and filthineſs of their bodies ſcoured and cleanſed out; I think it not amiſs firſt to ſpeak of Hawks caſtings; which are the naturalleſt and gentleſt purges, or ſcourings a Hawk can take, and doth the leaſt offend the vital parts. Therefore, you ſhall know, that all Oſtringers do eſteem plumage, and the ſoft feathers of ſmall Birds, with ſome part of the skin to be the beſt caſting a ſhort winged Hawk can take; and for the purging of the head, to make her tyre much upon

ſheeps Rumps, the fat cut away, and the bones well covered with parſly. But for long winged Hawks, the beſt caſting is fine Flannel, cut into ſquare pieces of an inch and half ſquare and all to be jagg'd, and ſo given with a little bit of meat. By theſe caſtings you ſhall know the ſoundneſs and unſoundneſs of your Hawk: for when ſhe hath caſt, you ſhall take up the caſting, which will be like a hard round pellet, ſomewhat long, and preſs it between your fingers, and if you find nothing but clear water come from it, then it is a ſign your Hawk is well and luſty; if there come from it a yellowiſh filthy matter, or if it ſtink, it is a ſign of rottenneſs and diſeaſe; but if it be greazie or ſlimy on the one ſide, then it is a ſign the Hawk is full of greaſe inwardly, which is not broken nor diſſolved: and then you ſhall give her a ſcouring, which is a much ſtronger purgation; and of ſcourings the gentleſt, next caſting, is to take four or five pellets of the yellow root of Selladine well cleanſed from filth, being as big as great peaſe, and give them out of the water early in the morning when the Hawk is faſting, and it will clenſe her mightily.

If you take the pellets of Selladine, and give them out of the Oyl of Roſes, or out of the ſirrup of Roſes, it is a moſt excellent ſcouring alſo, only it will for an hour or two make the Hawk ſomewhat ſickiſh. If you give your Hawk a little *Aloes Cicatrine*, as much as a bean, wrapt up in her meat, it is a moſt ſoveraign ſcouring, and doth not only avoid greaſe, but alſo killeth all ſorts of Worms whatſoever.

If your Hawk by over-flying, or too ſoon flying, be heated and inflamed in her body, as they are much ſubject thereunto: you ſhall then to cool their bodies, give them ſtones: Theſe ſtones are very fine white pibbles, lying in the Sands of gravelly Rivers, the bigneſs whereof you may chooſe according to the bigneſs of your Hawk, as ſome no bigger than a Bean, and thoſe be for Merlyns or Hobbies; ſome as big as two Beans, and they are for Faulcons gentle, Lanners, are ſuch like; and ſome much bigger then they, which are for Gerfaulcons, or ſuch like. And theſe ſtones if they be full of creſts and welts, they are the better, for the roughеſt ſtone is the beſt; ſo it be ſmooth and not greetty. And you ſhall underſtand, that ſtones are moſt proper for long-wing'd Hawks, and the number which you ſhall give at the moſt

muſt

must never exceed fifteen, for seven is a good number, so is nine or eleven, according as you find the Hawks heat more or less, and these stones must ever be given out of fair water, being before very well pickt and trim'd from all durt and filthiness. And thus much of Hawks castings, scourings, and stones.

CHAP. II.

Of Impostumes in Hawks.

IF your Hawk have any impostume rising from her, which is apparent to seen, you shall take sweet raisins, and boil them in Wine, and then crushing them, lay them warm to the sore, and it will both ripen and heal it: only it shall be good to scoure your Hawk very well inwardly, for that will abate the flux of all evil humours.

CHAP. III.

Of all sorts of sore eyes.

FOr any sore eye, there is nothing better than to take the juyce of ground Ivy, and drop it into the Eye. But if any Web be grown before you use this Medicine, then you shall take Ginger finely searst, and blow it into the Eye, and it will break the Web, then use the juyce of Ivy, and it will wear it away.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Pantas in Hawks.

THe Pantas is a stopping, or shortness of wind in Hawks, and the cure is, to give her the scowring of Selladine, and the oyl of Roses, and then to wash her meat in the decoction of *Coltsfoot*, and it will help her.

CHAP. V.

Of casting the Gorge.

THis is when a Hawk, either through meat which she cannot digest, or through surfeit in feeding, casteth up the meat which she hath eaten, which is most dangerous. And the only way to cure her, is to keep her fasting, and to feed her with a very little at once of warm bloody meat, as not above half a Sparrow at a time, and be sure never to feed her again, till she have indued the first.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of all sorts of Worms, or Fylanders in Hawks.

WOrms or Fylanders, which are a kinde of Worms in Hawks, are either inward or outward; inward, as in the guts or intrails; or outward, as in any joynt or member: if they be inward, the scouring of Aloes is excellent to kill them; but if they be outward, then you shall bathe the place with the juyce of the Herb *Ameos* mixt with *Honey*.

CHAP. VII.

Of all swelling in Hawks feet, and of the pin in the foot.

FOr the pin in the sole of the Hawks foot: or for any swelling upon the foot, whether it be soft or hard, there is not any thing more soveraign, then to bathe it in *Patch-grease* molten, and applied to, exceeding hot; and then to fold a fine Cambrick rag dipt in the same grease about the sore.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the breaking of a Pounce.

THis is a very dangerous hurt in Hawks, especially in *Gerfaulcons*; for if you break or rive her pounce, or but coape it so short that she bleed, though it be very little, yet it will indanger her life: the cure therefore is, presently upon the hurt, with a hot wyar so sear it, till the blood staunch, and then to drop about it pitch of Burgundy, and wax mixt together, or for want thereof, a little hard Merchants wax, and that will both heal it, and make the Pounce grow.

CHAP. IX.

Of Bones broken, or out of joynt.

IF your Hawk have any bone broken or misplaced, you shall after you have set it, bathe it with the Oyl of *Mandrake* and *Swallows*, mixt together, and then splent it, and in nine daies it will be knit and have gotten strength.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of inward bruiſings in Hawks.

IF your Hawk either by ſtooping amongſt Trees, or by the incounter of ſome fowl, get any inward bruiſe, which you ſhall know by the blackneſs, or bloodineſs of their mutes, you ſhall then anoint her meat every time you feed her, with *Sperma-Cæti*, till her mutes be clear again, and let her meat be warm and bloody.

CHAP. XI.

Of Killing of Lice.

IF your Hawk be troubled with Lice, which is a general infirmity, and apparent, for you ſhall ſee them creep all over on the outſide of her feathers if ſhe ſtand but in the air of the fire. You ſhall bathe her all over in warm water and Pepper ſmall beaten, but be ſure that the water be not too hot; for that is dangerous; neither that it touch her eyes.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Rye in Hawks.

THis diſeaſe of the Rye in Hawks proceedeth from two cauſes; the one is cold and poze in the head, the other is foul and moſt uncleanly feeding, the Faulconer being negligent to ſeek and cleanſe his Hawks beak and nares, but ſuffering the blood and filthineſs of meat to ſtick and cleave thereunto. For indeed the infirmity is nothing elſe but a ſtopping up of the nares: by means whereof, the Hawk not being able to caſt and avoid the corruption of her head, it turns to putrifaction, and in ſhort ſpace kills the Hawk: and this diſeaſe is a great deal more incident to ſhort winged Hawks than to long. The ſigns whereof are apparent by the ſtopping of the nares. The cure is to let your Hawk tyre much upon ſinewy and bony meat, as the rumps of Mutton (the fat being taken away) or the pinions of the wings of fowl, either being well lapt in a good handful of Parſly, and forcing her to ſtrain hard in the tearing of the ſame, and with much diligence to cleanſe and waſh her beak clean with water after her feeding, eſpecially if her meat were warm and bloody.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Frounce.

THe Frounce is a Cankerous Ulcer in a Hawks mouth, got by over-flying, or other inflammation proceeding from the inward parts; foul and unclean food is also a great ingenderer of this disease. The signs are a soreness in the Hawks mouth, which sore will be furr'd and cover'd over with white scurf, or such like filthiness; also if the Ulcer be deep and ill, the Hawk will wind and turn her head awry, making her beak stand upright; and the cure is to take Allom, and having beaten it to fine powder, mix it with strong Wine-vinegar, till it be somewhat thick, and then wash and rub the sore therewith till it be raw, and that the scurf be clean taken away. Then take the juyce of *Lollium*, and the juyce of *Radish*, and mixing it with Salt, anoint the sore therewith, and in few daies it will cure it.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Rhume.

THe Rhume is a continual running, or dropping at the Hawks nares, proceeding from a general cold, or else from over-flying, and then a sudden cold taken thereupon; it stoppeth the head, and breeds much corruption therein, and the signs are the dropping before-said, and a general heaviness, and sometimes a swelling of the head. The cure is, to take the juyce of *Beets*, and squirt it oft into the Hawks nares. Then when you feed her, wash her meat in the juyce of *Broomwort*, and it will quickly purge, and set her sound,

CHAP. XV.

Of the Fornicas in Hawks.

THe Fornicas in Hawks is a hard horn growing upon the back of a Hawk, ingendred by a poysonous and Cankerous Worm, which fretting the skin and tender yellow welt between the head and the beak, occasioneth that hard horn, or excretion to grow or offend the bird: the sign is the apparent sight of the horn, and the cure is, to take a little of a Bulls Gall, and beating it with Aloes, anoint the Hawks beak therewith morning and

an evening, and it will in very few daies take the horn away.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Fistula in Hawks.

THe Fistula in hawks is a cankerous, hollow Ulcer in any part of a hawks body, as it is in mens, beasts, or any other creature: the signs are, a continual mattering, or running of the sore, and a thin, sharp water like lye, which as it falls from the same, will fret the sound parts as it goeth. The cure is, with a fine small wiar, little stronger than a verginal-wiar, and wrapt close about with a soft fleaved silk, and the point blunt and soft, to search the hollowness and crookedness of the ulcer, which the pliantness of the wiar will easily do; and then having found out the bottome thereof, draw forth the wiar, and according to the bigness of the Orifice, make a tent of fine lint being wet, which may likewise bend as the wiar did, and be within a very little as long as the ulcer is deep; for to tent it to the full length is ill, and will rather increase than diminish the Fistula, and therefore ever as the Fistula heals, you must take the tent shorter and shorter. But to the purpose, when you have made your tent fit, you shall first take strong Allom-water; and with a small Syringe squirt the sore three or four times therewith, for that will cleanse, dry, and scour every hollowness in the ulcer: then take the tent and anoint it with the juice of the herb *Robert*, *Vinegar*, and *Allom* mixt together and it will dry up the sore. The Cure.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Privy Evill in Hawks.

THe privy evil in hawks is a secret heart-sickness, procured either by over-flying, corrupt food, cold or other disorderly keeping; but most especially for want of stones or casting in the due season: the signs are, heaviness of head, and countenance, evil enduing of her meat, and foul black mutings. The cure is, to take morning and evening a good piece of a warm sheeps heart, and steeping it either in new Asses milk, or new Goats milk, or for want of both, the new milk of a red Cow, with the same to feed your Hawk, till you see her strength and lust recovered.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of wounds in Hawks.

HAwks by the croſs incounters of fowls eſpecially the Heron, by ſtooping amongſt buſhes, thorns, trees, and by divers ſuch accidents, do many times catch ſores and moſt grievous wounds, the ſigns whereof are the outward appearance of the ſame. And the cure is if they be long and deep, and in place that you may conveniently, firſt to ſtitch them up, and then to taint them up with a little ordinary Balſamum, and it is a preſent remedy. But if it be in ſuch a place as you cannot come to ſtitch it up, you ſhall then only take a little lint, and dip it in the juyce of the hearb called *Mouſ-ear*, and apply it to the ſore, and it will in ſhort ſpace heal it. But if it be in ſuch a place as you can by no means bind any thing thereunto, you ſhall then only anoint or bathe the place with the aforeſaid juice, and it will heal and dry up the ſame in very ſhort time; the juice of the green hearb called with us, Engliſh Tobacco, will likewiſe do the ſame: for it hath a very ſpeedy courſe in healing and cleanſing, as hath been approved by divers of the beſt Faulconers of this Kingdome, and other nations.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Apoplexie, or falling evil in Hawks.

THe Apoplexy, or falling evil in Hawks is a certain Vertigo or dizzineſs in the brain, proceeding from the oppreſſion of cold humours which do for a certain ſpace numb, and as it were mortifie the ſenſes: the ſigns are, a ſudden turning up the hawks head, and falling from her pearch without bating, but only with a general trembling over all the body; and lying ſo, as it were in a traunce a little ſpace, ſhe preſently recovereth, and riſeth up again, but is ſick and heavy many hours after. The cure therefore is, to gather the herb *Aſterion* when the moon is in the Wain, and in the ſign Virgo, and taking the juice thereof to waſh your hawks meat therin, and to feed her, and it hath been found a moſt ſoveraign medicine.

The Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Of the purging of Hawks.

THere is nothing more needful to hawks than purgation, and cleanſings; for they are much ſubject to fat and foulneſs of body inwardly, and their exerciſe being much and violent, if there be neglect, and that their glut be not taken away, it will breed ſickneſs and death; therefore it is the part of every skilful Faulconer, to underſtand how and when, to purge his hawk, which is generally ever before ſhe be brought to flying, and the moſt uſuall ſeaſon for the ſame, is before the beginning of Autumn, for commonly knowing Gentlemen will not flye at the Partridge, till corn be from the ground; and if he prepare for the River early, he will likewiſe begin with that ſeaſon: the beſt purgation then, that you can give your hawk, is *Aloes Cicatrine* wrapt up in warm meat, the quantity of a French peaſe, and ſo given the hawk to eat ever the next morning after ſhe hath flown at any train, or taken other exerciſe, whereby ſhe may break or diſſolve the greaſe within her.

CHAP. XXI.

For a Hawk that cannot mute.

IF your hawk cannot mute, as it is a common infirmity which happeneth unto them, you ſhall take the lean of pork, being newly kild, whilſt it is warm, to the quantity of two Walnuts, and lapping a little *Aloes* therein, give it the hawk to eat, and it will preſently help her. There be divers good Faulconers in this caſe, which will take the roots of Selandine, and having cleanſed it, and cut it into little ſquare pieces as big as Peaſe, ſteep it in the oyl of Roſes, and ſo make the hawk ſwallow down three or four of them, and ſure this is very good and wholſome, only it will make the hawk exceeding ſick for two or three hours after. Neither muſt the Hawk be in any weak ſtate of body, when this later medicine is given her. Alſo, you muſt obſerve to keep your hawk at thoſe times exceeding warm, and much on your fiſt, and to feed her moſt with warm birds, leſt otherwiſe you cling and dry up her entrails too much, which is both dangerous and mortal.

CHAP. XXII.

The assured sign to know when a Hawk is sick.

HAwks are generally of such a stout, strong, and unyielding nature, that they will many times cover and conceal their sicknesses so long, till they be grown to that extremity, that no help of Physick, or other knowledge can avail for their safety: for when the countenance, or decay of stomach, which are the ordinary outward faces of infirmities appear, then commonly is the disease past remedy. Therefore to prevent that evil, and to know sickness whilst it may be cured, you shall take your hawk, and turning up her train, if you see that her tuel or fundament either swelleth or looketh red, or if her eyes or ears likewise be of a fiery complexion, it is a most infallible sign that the hawk is sick, and much out of temper.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Feaver in Hawks.

HAwks are as much subject to Feavers, as any creatures whatsoever, and for the most part they proceed from over-flying, or other extraordinary heats, mixt with sudden colds, given them by the negligence of unskilful keepers. And the cure is, to

The Cure. set her in a cool place, upon a pearch, wrapt about with her cloaths and feed her oft with a little at a time of chickens flesh steeped in water, wherein hath been soaked Cucumer-seeds. But if you find by the stopping of her ears or head, that she is offended more with cold than heat, then you shall set her in a warm place, and feed her with the bloody flesh of pigeons, washt either in white-wine, or in water, wherein hath been boiled either Sage, Marjerom, or Camomil.

CHAP. XXIV.

To help a Hawk that cannot digest her meat.

IF your Hawk be hard of disgestion, and neither can turn it over, nor empty her panel, which is very often seen, you shall then take the heart of a Frog, and thrust it down into her throat, and pull it back again by a thread fastned thereunto once or twice suddenly, and it will make her cast her gorge presently.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Gout in Hawks.

HAwks, especially those which are free and strong strikers, are infinitely subject to the Gout, which is a swelling, knotting, and contracting of a Hawks feet: The cure thereof is, to take two or three drops of blood from her thigh-vein, a little above her knee, and then anoint the feet with the juice of the herb Hollihock. and let all her pearch be anointed also with tallow, and the juice of that herb mixt together. Now if this disease, (as oft it hapneth) be in a Hawks wing, then you shall take two or three drops of blood from the vein under her wing, and then anoint the pinions and inside thereof, with *Unguentum de Altheæ* made very warm, which you may buy of every Apothecary. The Cure.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the staunching of Blood.

IT is a known experience amongst the best Faulconers, that if the Gerfaulcon shall but lose two or three drops of blood it is mortal, and the Hawk will die suddenly after; which to prevent, if the blood proceed from any pounce, which is most ordinary, then upon the instant hurt, you shall take a little hard Merchants wax, and drop it upon the sore, and it will presently stop it; if it be upon any other part of the hawks body, you shall clap thereunto a little of the soft down of a Hare, and it will immediately stanch it; without these two things, a good Faulconer should never go, for they are to be used in a moment. And thus much of the hawk and her diseases.

Of Bees.

CHAP. I.

Of the nature, ordering, and preservation of Bees.

OF all the creatures which are behoveful for the use of man, there is nothing more necessary, wholsome, or more profitable, than the Bee; nor any less troublesome, or less chargeable. To speak first of the nature of Bees, it is a The nature of Bees.

a creature gentle, loving and familiar about the man, which hath the ordering of them, ſo he comes neat, ſweet and cleanly amongſt them, otherwiſe if he have ſtrong, and ill ſmelling ſavours about him, they are curſt and malicious, and will ſting ſpitefully, they are exceeding induſtrious and much given to labour, they have a kinde of government amongſt themſelves, as it were a well-ordered Common-wealth, every one obeying and following their King or Commander, whoſe voice (if you lay your ear to the hive) you ſhall diſtinguiſh from the reſt, being louder and greater, and beating with a more ſolemn meaſure. They delight to live amongſt the ſweeteſt hearbs, and flowers, that may be, eſpecially Fennel, and wall Gilly-flowers, and therefore their beſt dwellings are in gardens: and in theſe gardens, or near adjoyning thereunto, would be divers fruit trees growing, chiefly plum-trees, or peach-trees; in which, when they caſt, they may knit, without taking any far flight, or wandring to find out their reſt: this garden alſo would be well fenced, that no Swine nor other Cattel may come therein, as well for overthrowing their hives, as alſo for offending them with their ill ſavours. They are alſo very tender, and may by no means indure any cold; wherefore you muſt have a great reſpect to have their houſes exceeding warm, cloſe, and tight, both to keep out the froſt and ſnow, as alſo the wet and rain; which if it once enter into the hive, it is a preſent deſtruction.

Of the Bee hive.

To ſpeak then of the Bee-hive, you ſhall know there be divers opinions touching the ſame, according to the cuſtomes and natures of Countries; for in the champian Countries, where there is very little ſtore of woods, they make their hives of long Rye ſtraw, the touls being ſowed together with bryers; and theſe hives are large and deep, and even proportioned like a Sugar-loaf, and croſs-bar'd within, with flat ſplints of wood, both above and under the midſt part. In other champian Countries where they want Rye ſtraw, they make them of Wheat-ſtraw, as in the Weſt Countries, and theſe hives are of a large compaſs, but very low and flat, which is naught, for a hive is better for his largeneſs, and keepeth out the rain beſt when it is ſharpeſt. In the wood Countries, they make them of cloven haſels, watteld about with broad ſplints of aſh; and ſo formed, as before I ſaid, like a Sugar-loaf.

And

And these hives are of all other the best, so they be large and smooth within, for the straw hive is subject to breed mice, and nothing destroyeth Bees sooner than they, yet you must be governed by your ability, and such things as the soil affords.

Now for the Wood-hive which is the best, you shall thus trim and prepare it for your Bees: you shall first make a stiff morter of lime and Cow dung, mixed together; and then having cross barred the hive within, daub the out-side of the hive with the morter, at least three inches thick, down close unto the stone; so that the least air may not come in: then taking a Rye-sheaf, or Wheat-sheaf, or two that is balted, and not thrashed, and chusing out the longest straws, binde the ears together in one lump, put it over the hive, and so as it were thatch it all over, and fix it close to the hive with an old hoop, and this will keep the hive inwardly as warm as may be; also, before you lodge any Bee in your hive, *you shall perfume it with Juniper, and rub it all within with Fennel, Hyssop, and Time flowers; and also the stone upon which the hive shall stand.* Of the trimming of the Hive.

Now for the placing of your hive, you shal take three long, thick stakes, cut smooth and plain upon the heads, and drive them into the earth triangular wise, so that they may be about two foot above the ground: *then lay over them a broad smooth paving stone, which may extend every way over the stakes above half a foot: and upon the stone set your hive, being less in compass than the stone by more than six inches every way; and see the door of your hive stand directly upon the rising of the morning Sun, inclining a little unto the Southward: and be sure to have your hives well sheltred from the North winds, and generally from all tempestuous weather: for which purpose if you have sheads to draw over them in the winter, it is so much the better. And you shall place your hives, in orderly rows one before another, keeping clean allies between them every way, so as you may walk and view each by it self severally.* The placing of hives.

Now for the casting of your Bees, it is earlier or later in the year, according to the strength and goodness of the Stock, or the warmth of the weather. The usual time for casting, is from the beginning of *May*, till the middle of *July*: and in all that time you must have a vigilant eye, or else some servant to watch their rising, lest they flye away, and knit in some obscure place for

from

from your knowledge: yet if you please, *you may know which hives are ready to cast a night before they do cast, by laying your ear after the Sun-set to the hive, and if you hear the Master Bee above all the rest, in a higher and more solemn note, or if you see them lye forth upon the stone, and cannot get into the hive, then be sure that stock will cast within few hours after.*

As soon as you can perceive the swarm to rise, and are got up into the air, (*which will commonly be in the height and heat of the Sun*) you shall take a Brass *Bason, Pan,* or *Candlestick,* and make a tinkling noise thereupon, for they are so delighted with musick, that by the sound thereof they will presently knit upon some branch or bough of a tree. Then when they are all upon one cluster, you shall take a new sweet hive well dress, and rubb'd with Hony and Fennel, and shake them all into the hive; then having spread a fair sheet upon the ground, set the hive thereon, and cover it all clean over close with the sheet, and so let it stand till after Sun-set; at which time the Bees being gathered up to the top of the hive (as their nature is) you shall set them upon the stone having rubb'd it with Fennel; and then daub it close round about with lime and dung mixt together, and only leave them a door or two to issue out and in at. There be some stocks, which will cast twice or thrice, and four times in a year; but it is not good, for it will weaken the stock too much; therefore to keep your stocks in strength and goodness, it is not good to suffer any to cast above twice at the most.

Again, you shall with pieces of brick or other smooth stones, raise the stock in the night, three or four inches above the stone, and then daub it close again, and the Bees finding house-room, will fall to work within, and not cast at all; and then will their stocks be worth two others: and in the same manner, if you had the year before any small swarms, which are likely to cast this year, or if you have any early swarms, this year, which are likely to cast at the later end of the year: both which are often found to be the destruction of the stocks: in either of these cases, you shall inlarge the hive, as it is before said, by raising it up from the stone, and it will not only keep them from casting, but make the stock better, and of much more profit, for that hive which is of the most weight, is of the best price.

Now

Now when you have mark't out those old Stocks, which you intend to sell (*for the oldest is fittest for that purpose*) you shall know that the best time to take them is at *Michaelmas*, before any Frosts hinder their labour: and you shall take them ever from the stone in the dark of night, when the aire is cold, and either drown them in water, or smother them with Fusbals; for to chase them from their Hives, as some do, is naught, because all such Bees as are thus frighted from their Hives, do turn robbers; and spoyl other stocks, because that time of the year will not suffer them to labour, and get their own livings.

Now if you have any weak Swarms which coming late in the year cannot gather sufficient of Winter provision; in this case you shall feed such stocks by daily smearing the stone before the place of their going in and out, with Honey and Rose-water mixt together, and so you shall continue to do all the strength of Winter, till the warmth of the Spring, and the Sun-shine bring forth store of flowers for them to labour on. You shall continually look that no Mice, and such like Vermine breed about the Hives, for they are poysonous, and will make Bees forsake their Hives.

Now lastly, if any of your stocks happen to dye in the Winter (as amongst many, some must quail) you shall not by any means stir the stock, but let it remain till the Spring, that when you see your Bees begin to grow busie, then take up the dead stock, and trim it clean from all filth, but by no means stir or crush any of the Combs, then dash the Combs, and besprinkle them, and besmear all the inside of the Hive with Honey, Rose-water, and the juyce of Fennel mixt together, and daub also the stone therewith. Also then set down the Hive again, and daub it as if it had never been stirred; and be well assured, that the first Swarm which shall rise, either of your own, or of any Neighbours of yours within the compass of a mile, it will knit in no place, but within that Hive, and such a stock will be worth five others, because they finde half their work finished at their first entrance into the Hive; and this hath been many times approved by those of the most approved'st experience. And thus much touching the Bee and his Nature.

A Plat-form for Ponds, which the Printer hath added to this ensuing discourse, for the better satisfaction and delight of such as having a convenient Plat of ground for the same purpose, shall be desirous to make any Ponds for the encrease and store of Fish.

G. The Gate.

D. The Ditch and Quickset Hedge.

W. The Walks.

B. The Bridge.

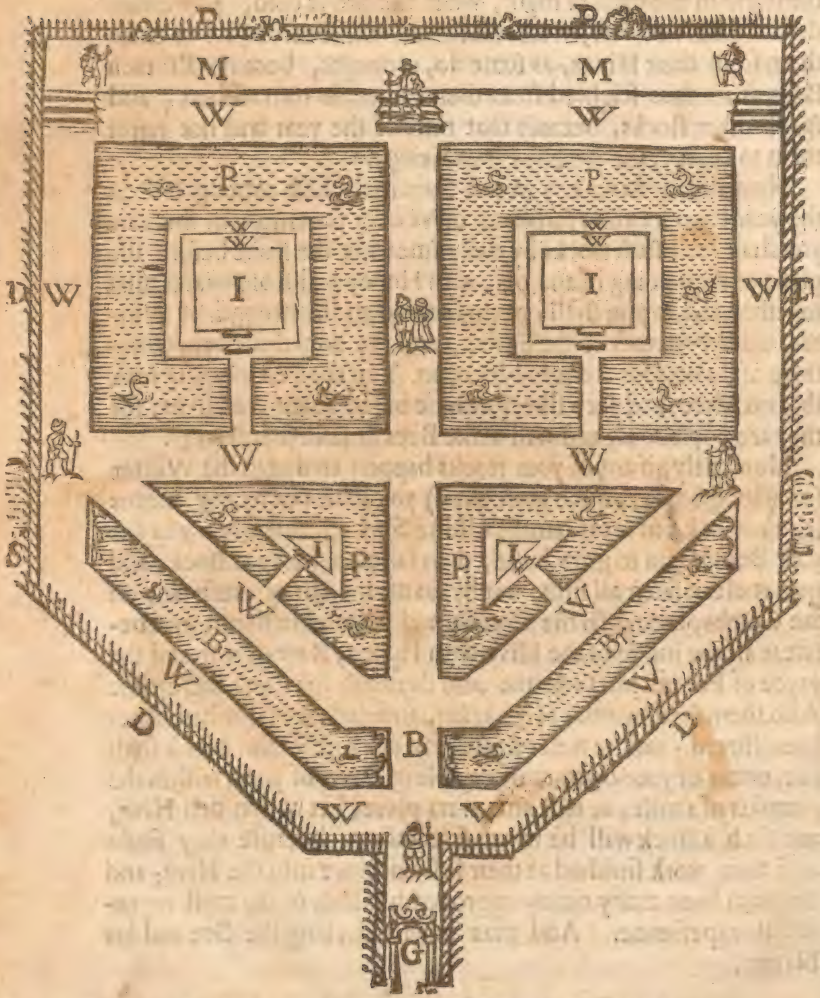
Br The Brook.

P. The Ponds.

I. The Penises.

M. The Mount.

S. The Spring.



The Walks about the Ponds may be planted with Fruit Trees, or Willows.

Of

Of Fishing.

CHAP. I.

Of Fishing in general; and first of the making of the Fish-Pond.

FOrasmuch as great Rivers do generally belong either to the King, or the particular Lords of several Manors, and that it is only the Fish-Pond which belongeth to private persons, I will as a thing most belonging to the general profit, here treat of Fish-Ponds. And first touching the making of them, you shall understand, that the Grounds most fit to be cast into Fish-ponds, are those which are either marishy, boggy, or full of Springs, and indeed most unfit either for grazing, or any other use of better profit. And of these grounds, that which is full of clear Springs will yield the best water; that which is marishy will feed Fish best; and that which is boggy will defend the Fish from being stolne.

Having then such a piece of waste ground, and being determined to cast it into a Fish-pond: you shall first by small trenches, draw all the springs or moist veins into one place, and so drain the rest of the ground, and then having markt out that part which you mean to make the head of your pond, which although it be the lowest part in the true levell of the ground, yet you shall make it the highest in the eye; you shall first cut the trench of your flood-gate, so as the water may have a swift fall, when you mean at any time to let it out; and then on each side of the trench drive in great stakes of six foot in length, and six inches square, of Oak, Ash, or Elm, but Elm is the best, and these you must drive in rowes within four foot one of another, at least four foot into the earth, as broad and as far off each side the Floud-

gate as you intend the head of your Pond shall go; then begin to dig your Pond of such compasse as your ground will conveniently give leave, and all the earth you digg out of the Pond, you shall carry and throw amongst the stakes, and with strong rammers ram the Earth hard between them, till you have covered all the stakes; then drive in as many more new stakes besides the heads of the first, and then ramme more earth over and above them also; And thus do with stakes above stakes, till you have brought the head sides to such a convenient height as is fitting. And in all this work have a special care, that you make the inside of your banks so smooth, even, and strong that no current of the water may wear the earth from the stakes.

You shall digge your Fish-pond not above eight foot deep and so as it may carry not above six foot water.

You shall pave all the bottome and banks of the Pond with large sods of Flot-grasse, which naturally grows under water, for it is a great feeder of Fish: and you shall lay them very close together, and pinne them downe fast with small stakes and windings. You shall upon one side of the Pond, in the bottome, stake fast divers Bavens or Faggots of brush-wood, wherein your Fish shall cast their Spawn, for that will defend it from destruction; and at another place you shall lay sods upon sods, with the grasse sides together, in the bottom of the Pond, for that will nourish and breed Eeles: and if you stick sharp stakes likewise by every side of the Pond, that will keep Theeves from robbing them. When you have thus made your Ponds, and have let in the water, you shall then store them; Carp, Bream, and Tench by themselves; and Pike, Pearch, Eele, and Tench by themselves: for the Tench being the Fishes Physitian is seldom devoured: also in all Ponds you shall put good store of Roch, Dace, Loch, and Menew; for they are both food for the greater Fishes, and also not uncomely in any good man's dish.

You shall to every Melter put three Spawners, and some put five, and in three years the encrease will be great, but in five hardly to be destroyed. And thus much for Ponds and their stockings.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the taking of all sorts of Fish, with Nets, or otherwise.

IF you will take Fish with little or no trouble, you shall take of *Sal-armoniack* a quarter of an ounce, of young *Chives*, and as much of a Calves-Kell, and beat them in a mortar untill it be all one substance, and then make Pellets thereof, and cast them into any corner of the Pond, and it will draw thither all the Carp, Bream, Cheven, or Barbell, that are within the water; then cast your shove-net beyond them, and you shall take choice at your pleasure. If you will take Roch, Dace, or any small kind of Fish, take Wine-lees, and mixe it with Oyl, and hang it in a Chimney-corner till it be dry, or look black; and then putting it into the water, they will come so abundantly to it, that you may take them with your hand. If you will take Trout, or Grailing, take two pound of Wheat bran, half so much of white Pease, and mixing them with strong brine, beat it till it come to a perfect paste: then put Pellets thereof into any corner of the water, and they will resort thither, so as you may cast your Net about them at your pleasure. But if you will take either Pearch or Pike, you shall take some of a Beasts Liver, black Snails, yellow Butterflies, Hogs blood, and Opoponax, beat them altogether, and having made a paste thereof, put it into the water, and be assured, that as many as are within forty paces thereof, will presently come thither, and you may take them at your pleasure.

Lastly, If you take either two drams of Cock-stones, or twice so much of the Kernels of Pine-apple tree burnt, and beat them well together, and make round balls thereof, and put it into the water, either fresh or salt, any Salmon or great Fish will presently resort thither; you may take them either with Net or otherwise.

Also it is a most approved Experiment, That if you take bottles made of Hay, and green Oziers, or Willow mixt together, and sink them down in the middest of your Pond, or by the bank-sides, and so let them rest two or three dayes, having a cord so fastned unto them, that you may twitch them up on Land at your pleasure: believe it, all the good Eeles which are in

the

the Pond will come unto thoſe bottles; and you ſhall take them moſt abundantly: and if you pleaſe to bait thoſe Bottles by binding up Sheeps guts, or other garbage of Beaſts within them, the Eeles will come ſooner, and you may draw them oftner, and with better aſſurance. There be other wayes beſides theſe to take Eels, as with Weels, with the Eele-ſpear, or with bobbing for them with great Worms; but they are ſo generally known and practiſed, and ſo much inferiour to this already ſhewed, that I hold it a needleſs and vain labour to trouble your ears with the repetitions of the ſame; and the rather, ſith in this Work I have laboured only to declare the ſecrets of every knowledge, and not to run into any large circumſtance of thoſe things which are moſt common and familiar to all men. And thus much of Fiſh and Fiſh-ponds, and their general knowledge. Now as touching the Angle, and the ſecrets thereto belonging, you ſhall find it at large handled in the next Book called *Country Contentments.*

FINIS.

The Table of the First Book.

Of Beasts.

Of the Horse.

OF the Horse in general p. 1
Nature of Horses 2
Choice of horses, and their shapes ib.
Colours of Horses ib.
Horses for a Princes seat 3
Horses for travel ib.
Hunting Horses ib.
Running Horses ib.
Coach Horses 4
Pack Horses ib.
Cart Horses ib.
Of Mares ib.
Ordering Horses for service 5
Ordering Horses for a Princes seat ibid.
Ordering of travelling horses ib.
Ordering of Hunting Horses 6
Ordering of Running Horses ib.
Ordering of Coach Horses 7
Ordering of the Pack, or Cart-Horse ib.
The preservation of Horses ib.
Of riding in general 8
Imperfect use of this recreation ib.
The pleasure of riding ib.
The Authors Apology. 9
The taming of a young Colt ib.
His sadling and bridling 10
His first backing ib.
Three main points of a Horsemans skill 12
Of helps, and what they be ib.
Of corrections, and which they be ib.
Of cherishings 13
Of the Musrole and Martingale ib.
Of treading the large rings 14
Choice of grounds ib.
Of galloping large ringe 15
Helps in the large ring turns 16
Corrections in the ring turns ib.
Cherishing in the ring turns 17
Of stopping and going back ib.
Helps 18
Corrections ib.
Cherishings ib.
Of advancing before 19
Helps ib.
Corrections ib.
Cherishings 20
The use of advancing ib.
Of yerking behind ib.
Helps 21
Corrections ib.
Cherishings ib.
Of turning ib.

Helps

Helps 23
Corrections ibid.
Cherishings ibid.
Of the turning post 24
Of managing 25
Diversities of manages 26
Of the Cariere ib.
Horses for pleasure 27
Of bounding aloft ib
Of the Corvet ib.
Of the Gallop Galliard 28
Of the Capriolle 29
Of going aside ib.
Of riding before a Prince 30
Of the Caragolo ib.
To ride for recreation 31
Of breeding of all sorts of Horses, fit for the Husbandmans use ibid.
Grounds to breed on 32
Division of Grounds 33
Choice of the Stallion ib.
Choice of Mares ib
When to put them together ib
Of covering Mares ib.
To know if a Mare hold 34
To conceive Male foals ib.
To provoke lust ib.
To keep Mares from barrenness ib.
Ordering Mares after covering ib.
A help for Mares in foaling 35
Ordering Mares after foaling ib.
Weaning of foals ib.
Ordering after weaning ib.
Gelding of Colts 36
Of Horses for travel, and how to make them amble ib.
The marks of a good travelling Horse ib.
To make a Horse amble ib.
Divers wayes of ambling 37
Of travelling ib.
Of wisping ib.
Helps in ambling ib.
The ordering and dieting of the Hunting-horse 38
Taking up the Hunting horse ib.
Cloathing the Hunting horse ib.
Dressing the Hunting horse 39
Of watring and feeding the Hunting horse 40
The exercise of the horse 42
The scouring of the horse ib.
Ordering a horse after exercise ibid.
Of ordering, dyeting, taking up, cloathing, dressing, watering, and feeding the running horse 42
Of his exercise by ayring and coursing 45
Of Sweats ib.
Of scouring him ib.
Ordering after exercise ib.
General rules for a running horse 46
General rules for a travelling horse 47
How to cure all inward sicknesses 48
Of the Head-ach, Frenzie, or Staggers ibid.
Of the sleeping Evil, 49
Of the falling Evill, Planet-struck

ſtruck Night-mare, or palſie. ib.
Of the generall cramp, or convulſion of ſinews 50
Of any cold or cough, wet or dry, or for any conſumption or putrifaction of the Lungs whatſoever ib.
Of the running Glaunders, or mourning of the chines ib.
Of hide-bound, or conſumption of the fleſh 51
Of the breaſt pain, or any ſickneſſe of the heart ib.
Of tyred horſes ib.
Of diſeaſes of the ſtomack, as ſurfeits, loathing of meate, or drink 52
Fonndring in the body ib.
The Hungry-evill ib.
Diſeaſes in the Liver, &c. 53
Of the Yellowes and diſeaſes of the Gall ib.
Of the ſickneſſe of the Spleen ib.
Of the Dropſie, or evill habit of the body 54
Of the Chollick, Belly-ake, or Belly bound ib.
Of the Lax or Bloody-Flux ib.
Of the falling of the Fundament 55
Of Bots and Worms of all ſorts ib.
Of pain in the Kidneys, pain to piſs, and Stone ib.
Of the Strangullion ib.
Of piſſing blood ib.
Of the Colt-evill, wattering of the yard, falling of the yard, ſhedding of ſeed 56
Of the particular diſeaſes of Mares, as barrenneſs, conſumption, rage of love, caſting foals, hardneſſe to foal, and to make a Mare caſt her foal ib.
Of drinking venome, &c. 57
Of ſuppoſitories, Cliſters, and purgation ib.
Of Neeſings and Frictions 58
Of all the diſeaſes in the eies ib.
Of the Impoſthume in the ear, Poſe-evill, Fiſtula, ſwelling after blood-letting, any gald-back, Canker, ſit-faſt, Wenns, Navil-gall, &c. ib.
Of the Vives 59
Of the Strangle, Bile, Botch or Impoſthume ib.
Of the Canker in the Noſe, or any other part ib.
Of ſtanching blood in any part ib.
Of the diſeaſes in the mouth, as bloody rifts, Figs, Lampas, Camery, Inflammation, tongue hurt, or the Barbs 60
Of pain in the teeth, or looſe teeth ib.
Of the crick in the neck ib.
Of the falling of the Creſt, manginеſſe in the main, or ſhedding of hair 61
Of pain in the withers ib.
Of ſwaying the back, or weakneſſe in the back ib.
Of the itch in the tayle, ſcab, manginеſſe, farcy ib.

Of any halting whatsoever, &c. 61
Of foundring in the Feet 62
Of the splent, curb, bone-spaven, or any knob, or bony excression or ring-bone 63
Of the Mallander, Sellander, Paines, Scratches, Mallat, Mules, Crown-scab, &c. ib.
Of any upper attaint or neather, or any over-reaching ib.
Of all the infirmities of, in, or about the hoofs, &c. ibid.
Of the blood-spaven, hough, bony or any other unnatural swelling ibid.
Of Wind-gals. ibid.
Of enterfearing, shackle-gall, &c. ibid.
Hurts on the Cronet, as Quitter-bone or Matlong ib.
Of wounds in the foot, gravelling, pricking, fig, retrait, or cloying 66
To draw out a stub or thorn ib.
Of any Ambury or Tetter. ib.
Of the cords or string-halt ib.
Of spur-galling, &c. 67
To heal any sore or wound ib.
Of sinews cut ibid.
Of eating away dead flesh ib.
Of knots in joynts ib.
Of venemous wounds, &c. ib
Of Lice or Nits ib
To defend a horse from flies 68
Of bones broken, or out of joynt ib.
Of drying or skinning sores when they are almost whole ib.
A most famous Receipt to make a horse that is lean, and that is full of inward sickness, sound and fat, in fourteen dayes ib.
To make a white star 69

Of the Bull, Calf, Cow, or Oxe.

Of the Bull, Cow, Calf, or Oxe, &c. 69
The Countries for breed 70
Of not mixing, and mixing breeds ib.
The shape of the Bull ib.
The use of the Bull ib.
The shape of the Cow ib.
The use of the Cow 71
Of Calves, and their nourishing ibid.
Observations for Calves ib.
Of the Oxe and his use ib.
Of the Oxes food for labour 72
Oxen to feed for the Butcher ib.
To preserve Cattel in health ib.
Of the Feaver in Cattel 73
Of any inward sickness ib.
Of the diseases in the head, as the sturdy, &c. ib.
Of all the diseases in the eyes of Cattel, &c. ibid.
Of diseases in the Mouth, as Barbs, Bleans, &c. 74
Of diseases in the Neck, as being galled, bruised, swoln, closh &c. 75
Of the Pestilence, Gargill or Murrain ib.

Of mistiking, or leanness 76
Of diseases in the Guts, as flux, costiveness ib.
Of pissing blood ib.
Of dropping nostrils, or any cold ib.
Of all manner of swellings 77
Of the Worm in the tayl ib.
Of any Cough or shortnesse of breath ib.
Of any Impostume, Bile or Botch ib.
Of diseases in the sinews, as weakness, stiffnesse or soreness ib.
Of the generall scab, particular scab or scurf 78
Of the hide-bound, or dry skin ib.
Of diseases in the lungs, as lung-grown, &c. ib.
Of the biting with a mad dog, or other venemous beasts 79
Of the falling down of the palate ib.
Of any pain in the hoof as the soal, &c. ib.
Of all kind of bruisings 80
Of swallowing hens-dung, or any poyson ib.
Of killing Lice or Ticks ib.
Of the dew-bowle ib.
Of the losse of the Cud 81
Of the killing of all sorts of worms ib.
Vomiting blood ib.
Of the Gout ib.
Of the milting ib.
Of provoking a Beast to piss 82
Of the over-flowing of the gal ib.
Of a beast that is goared ib.
Of the Cow that is whethered ib.
Of drawing out of thorns, or stubs ib.
Of purging Cattel ib.
Of being shrew-run 83
Of faintnesse ib.
Of breeding milk in a Cow ib.
Of bones out of joynt or broken ib.
Of the rot in Beasts ib.
Of the Pantas 84
Of all manner of wounds ib.

Of the Sheep.

OF Sheep, their use, choice, shape and preservation 84
Of the staple of woull ib.
Of the Lear of sheep ib.
The shape of Sheep 86
When Ews should bring forth ib.
Ordering of Lambs ib.
Needful Observations 87
The preservation of Sheep ib.
The signs to know a sound sheep, and an unsound 88
Of sickness in Sheep, as the fever, &c. ib.
Of the general Scab ib.
Of killing Maggots 89
Of the Red-water ib.
Of Lung-sick, or any Cough or Cold ib.
Of the worm in the clay, or in any

any other part ib.
Of wild fire ib.
Of the diseases of the gall, as Choller, Jaundice, &c. 90
Of the tough flegm, or stoppings ib.
Of the bones broken, or out of joynt ib.
Of any sickneſſe in Lambs ib.
Of the sturdy turning-evill, or more-found 91
Of all diseases in the eyes in general ib.
Of water in a Sheeps belly ib.
Of the tag'd or belt Sheep ib.
Of the Pox in Sheep 92
Of the Wood-evill or cramp ib.
Of making an Ewe love her own Lamb, or any other Ewes Lamb ib.
Of licking up poyſon ib.
Of Lambs, yeaned sick 93
Of making an Ewe to be easily delivered ib.
Of Teeth looſe ib.
Of increasing milk ib.
Of the Staggers, or leaf-sickneſs ib.
Of all sorts of Worms ib.
Of the loſſe of the cud 94
Of saving sheep from the rot ib.
A few Precepts for the Shepherd ib.

Of Goats.

OF Goats and their natures 96
The shape of Goats ib.
The ordering of Goats ib.
Of any inward sickneſs, as the Peſtilence, &c. 97
Of the Dropſie ib.
Of ſtopping the Teats 98
Of Goats that cannot kid ib.
Of the Tetter, or dry Scab ib.
Of gelding Kids ib.
Of the Itch in Goats 99
Of the Tuell ſtopping ib.
Of the Staggers ib.

Of Swine.

OF all manner of Swine 99
The nature of Swine ib.
Of the choice and shape of Swine ib.
Of the uſe and profit of Swine 101
Of the Feaver, or any hidden sickneſs in Swine 102
Of Murrin, Peſtilence, or Catarrhe ibid.
Of the Gall in Swine ib.
Of the Meazels 103
Of the Impoſthumes in any part ibid.
Of Vomiting ib.
Of leanneſs, miſlike, ſcurf or mangineſs ib.

Of the sleeping Evil 104
Of pain in the Mist ib.
Unnaturalness in Swine ib.
Of the Laxe or Flux ibid.
Of the lugging of Swine with Dogs 106
Of the Pox in Swine ib.
Of killing Maggots in any part ibid
Of feeding Swine either for Bacon or Lard ib.
Of feeding Swine in Wood-Countries 106
Of feeding at the Reek ib.
Of feeding Swine in or about great Cities ibid.
Of feeding Hogs for Lard, or Bores for Brawn ib.

Of Conies.

OF tame Conies in generall 108
The nature of the Cony ib.
Of boxes for tame Conies ib.
Of the choice and profit of rich Conies 109
Of the feeding and preservation of Conies 109
Of the rot amongst Conies 110
Of madness in Conies ib.

The Table of the Second Book.

Of Poultry.

OF the Dunghill Cock-Hen, Chicken, and Capon, 111 to 112
Of the Dunghill Cock ib.
Of the choice and shape of the Cock ibid.
Of the Hen, her choyce & shape ibid.
Of setting Hens 112
Of the choyce of Eggs ibid.
Of Chickens 114
Of feeding and cramming Chickens ibid.
Of preserving eggs ib.
Of gathering Eggs 115
Of the Capon, and when to carve him 115
Of the Capon to lead Chickens ib.
Of feeding and cramming Capons ib.
Of the Pip in Poultry 116
Of the roup ib.
Of the Flux ib.
Of stopping in the belly ib.
Of lice in Poultry ib.
Of stinging with venomous Worms 117
Of all sore Eyes ib.
Of Hens which crow ib.

Of

Of Hens which eat their Egs ib.
Of keeping a Hen from sitting ib.
Of making Hens lay soon and oft ib.
Of making Hens lean 118
Of the Crow-trodden ib.
Of the Hen-house situation ibid.

Of Geese.

Of the Goose in general 119
Of the choice of Geese ib.
Of laying egs, and sitting ib.
Of the ordering of G slings 120
Of green Geese, and their fatting ib.
Of Ganders ib.
Of fatting of elder Geese ib.
Of gathering of Geese feathers ib.
Of the gargil in Geese ib.

Of Turkies.

Of Turkies in general 121
Of the choice of the Turkey-Cock ib.
Of the Turkey-Hen, and her sitting ib.
Of the feeding of Turkeys 122

Of Water-foul, and others.

Of the tame Duck 122
Of Wild Ducks, and their ordering ib.
Of Swans, and their feeding 123
Of Pea-Cocks and Pea-Hens, ibid.
Of the tame Pigeon, or rough-footed. 124
Of nourishing & fatting Herns, Puets, Guls, and Bitterns 125
Of feeding Partridge, Pheasant, and Quail 126
Of Godwits, Knots, Gray Plover or Curlews ib.
Of black Herns, Thrushes, Felfares ibid.

Of Hawks.

Of Hawks in general of all kinds 127
Of scowrings ib.
Impostbumes in Hawks 129
Of sore Eyes in Hawks ib.

Of the Pantas ib.
Of casting the Gorge ib.
Of all sorts of Worms or Pilanders 130
Of all swelling in Hawks feet. ib.
Of the breaking of a Pounce ib.
Of bones broke, or out of joynt ib.
Of all inward bruisings 131
Of killing Lice ib.
Of the Rie ib.
Of the Frounce 132
Of the Rheums ib.
Of the Fornicas ib.
Of the Fistula 133
Of the privy-evill 133
Of all sorts of wounds 134
Of the Apoplexy, or falling evil ib.
Of the purging of Hawks 135
Of a Hawk that cannot mute. ib.
The assuredst signs to know when a Hawk is sick 139
Of the Feaver in Hawks ib.
Of helping a Hawk that cannot digest ib.
Of the Gout in Hawks 137
Of the stanching of blood ib.

Of Bees.

OF Bees in general 138
Of the nature of Bees ib.
Of the Bee-hive ib.
Of the trimming of the hive. 139
Of the placing of hives ib.
Of the casting of Bees, and ordering the swarms ib.
Of setting hives 140
Of the preservation of weake stocks ib.
An excellent Secret concerning Bees 141

Of Fishing.

A Platform for Fish-ponds, 142
Of Fishing in general 143
Of the taking of all sorts of Fish with Nets, or otherwise 144

The

The Division of the Titles treated of in these Books.

First, Of the *Horse*, his Nature, Diseases, and Cures; with the whole Art of riding, and ordering all sorts of *Horses*, from *fol.* 1. to 70.

2. Of the *Bull*, *Cow*, *Calf*, or *Oxe*, their breeding, feeding, and curing, from *fol.* 70. to 83.

3. Of *Sheep*, their choice, use, shape, infirmities and preservation, from *fol.* 83. to 96.

4. Of *Goats*, their nature, shape, ordering and curing, from *fol.* 96. to 100.

5. Of *Swine*, their choice, breeding, curing, and feeding, in either Champion, or Wood Countries, from *fol.* 100. to 107.

6. Of tame *Conies*, from *fol.* 109. to 111.

7. Of *Poultry*, their ordering, fatting, cramming, and curing all the diseases to them incident, from *fol.* 111. to 128.

8. Of *Hawks*, either short-winged, or long-winged; the general Cure: for their diseases and infirmities, from *fol.* 128. to 138.

9. Of *Bees*, their ordering, profit, and preservation, from *fol.* 138. to 142.

10. Of *Fishing*, and making *Fish-Ponds*, from *fol.* 143. to the end.

FINIS.